

# INDEX

## A

- A-ba-ke (Avak), 452  
 Abaoji, 311, 393  
 Abaqa, 660, 687–88  
 Abbasid Caliphate, 427, 469, 521–23  
 A'bo Khan, 27  
 academies  
   Bailu[-dong] (white deer cave) Academy, 572, 574  
   Bailuzhou-shuyuan (white egret island) Academy, 628, 630  
   Culai Academy, 558  
   Donghu-shuyuan (east lake) Academy, 630  
   Dongping-fu-xue Academy, 561  
   Guo-zi-jian oblation academy, 634, 665, 698, 701  
   Hanlin[yuan] Academy, 63, 205, 609, 661  
   Han-lin *Guo-shi* Yuan academy, 661  
   imperial academy, 243  
   Kuizhangge Academy, 697  
   Taiji Academy, 326, 572-3  
   Taiji-shuyuan (grand/supreme ultimate/ridgepole/polar) Academy, 573  
   Taishan Academy, 558  
   Taizong's Hongwen-guan, 476  
   *Tai-xue* Imperial Academy, 665  
   *tai-xue*, 'wu-xue', 'zong-xue' and 'jing-xue' academies, 577  
   Yuelu (hill of deer) Academy, 572  
   *xueshi* yuan (academicians' house), 634  
 academicians (*xue-shi*)  
   Hao Jing, 609, 661  
   Hu Shijiang (Hu Zhongxian), 540  
   Li Cengbo, 605  
   Li Di, 267  
   Li Zhi, Li Xu, Wang pan, Xu Shilong and Gao Ming, 476  
   Ma Guangzu, 605  
   Sun Dading, 331  
   Tudan Gonglü, 633  
   Wang E4, 350, 371, 467, 475, 657  
   Wang Yue, 694  
   Wei Fan, 471, 568  
   Wen Tianxiang, 633  
   Xu Yingniao, 634  
   Xue Wenyu, 159  
   Yu Jie, 588  
   Zhang Xing, 325  
   Zhou Chi, 61  
 acquaintance Jurchens, 298. *See also* raw Jurchens.  
 Adriatic, 502–3  
 Aguda, 247, 300–301, 304  
 Ahmad, 306, 612  
 Ailao-yi people, 682  
 Alamut fort, 440, 519–21  
 Alans, 448, 451, 483–84, 487–89, 505  
 Aleppo, 451–52, 506–7, 523  
 Alexandria, 442  
 Alghu, 510, 659–60, 687–88  
 Alba Iulia, 499  
 A-li-hai-ya (Alihaiya), 623–25, 629, 681  
*Altan Debter*–Golden Book, 363, 373, 688  
 Ambakai (Ambaghai), 374–75, 383–84, 392  
 Amin-malike, 444–45  
 Amu Darya, 25-26, 84, 95, 428, 431, 434–35, 438–39, 442, 444  
 Amu Darya River Sweep Campaign, 433  
 Amur River, 291, 297, 327, 369, 724  
 An Bing, 552, 556  
 An Chongbao, 181  
 An Chonghai, 159  
 An Chonghui, 155-8, 182  
 An Chongjin, 153, 162, 232  
 An Chongrong, 161-2  
 An Diaozhe and Haan Hua, 43  
 An Jingda, 101  
 An Jinquan, 145, 148  
 An Jinjun, 127  
 An Jushou, 121  
 An Lushan, 22, 50-56, 73-5, 78, 95-97, 110-1, 115, 170, 213, 229, 253, 260, 285, 346, 367  
 Yan Qingfu, 117  
 An Qingxu, 54-6, 75  
 An Qingzong, 51  
 An Renyi, 135, 189-90, 197  
 An Shentong, 155  
 An Shiru, 120, 125, 131  
 An Shouzhong and Li Guiren, 54, 56  
 An Siqian, 165, 182  
 An Sishun, 53  
 An Siyi, 53  
 An Wenyu, 121  
 An Xiuxiu, 127

- An Yong, 241  
 An Yuanxin, 152  
 An Zhijian, 127  
 An Lushan-Shi Siming Rebellion, 74–75, 95–96, 110–11, 253, 260  
 ancient Chi-di people, 17, 297  
 ancient Uygur khan's Ke-dun city, 305, 425  
 Andijian, 429, 435  
 Andkhoy, 434, 439–40  
 Anfeng, 346, 350, 545, 551, 556–57, 574, 577,  
 Ankang, 180–81, 461–62, 565, 567–68, 583  
 Anlu, 162, 184, 519, 704–6  
 Annam (Vietnam), 98, 517, 594–95, 675–77, 680–86, 685  
 An-Shi Rebellion, 22, 74–76, 96, 98–99, 114–15  
 Anterior Jurchens, 292  
 anti-Jurchen activities, 543  
 Antioch, 523  
 An-tong, 510, 660, 662, 715  
 Anxi, 51, 53–54, 94, 100–101, 103  
 Aodulaheman (Ao-du-la-he-man), 503, 506–7  
 Arab-Persian, 75, 115, 714  
     Arab-Persia ghetto at Canton, 75, 115  
     Arab-Persia ghetto at Zalton, 218, 714  
 Arabic 'Ma-da-ba' calendrical adjustment, 477  
 Arabic *sepah* army, 715  
 Arabs, 51–52, 74–75, 94–96, 103–4, 429–30, 432  
 Arabs and Karluks as Tibetan mercenary army, 399  
 Araxes River, 451–52  
 Archduke Frederick, 500  
 Archduke Zhou, 617, 666  
 Argun River area, 17, 67, 368, 371–72, 387, 390  
 Arik-Buka (Ariq-boeke), 607–8, 614, 657–60, 666, 687–88  
 Arik-Buka's rebellion, 658, 665  
 Armenia, 447–48, 451–52  
 Arsacia (Mulahida/ Hashashin), 354, 506, 511, 519–21  
 Arsacia Campaigns, 435, 439–40  
 Arsacia capital city fort of Maimendisi-bu, 520  
 Ashgabat, 431, 433–35, 437  
 Ashina Helu, 44  
 Ashina Mishe, 44, 107–8  
 Ashina Shidianmi, 25–26  
 Ashina Shubin, 69  
 Ata-Malek Juvaini's Qaili and Qaimich Rivers, 418, 422, 425, 427–28, 431  
 Austria, 496–97, 500–502, 504  
 Austrian-Bohemian, 502  
 Austronesian people, 2  
 Avars, 3, 26, 107  
 Ayusiridara, 699, 721, 723–24  
 Ayuur-balbad, 693  
 Ayyubids, 450–51  
 Ayyubids dynasty, 523  
 Azerbaijan, 96, 447–48, 450–51, 510  
 A-zhu, 617–19, 621, 624, 627  
 A-zhu-lu's Mongol, 473  
 Azov, 449
- ## B
- Bacman, 484  
 Badakhshan, 394, 415, 433, 438, 443  
 Badakhshan diversion campaign, 438  
 Badulu and Dahai's Mongol, 581  
 Ba'erhuti tribe, 344, 419  
 Ba'erzhen, 433  
 Baghdad, 95, 452, 506, 512, 521–22  
 Bai Anmin, 531  
 Bai Buxin, 709  
 Bai Chengfu, 161-2  
 Bai Chongzan, 223  
 Bai Hua, 358, 461–62, 468, 473, 561–64  
 Bai Minzhong, 62  
 Bai Shizhong, 249  
 Bai Wen'ge, 342  
 Bai Xiaode, 97  
 Bai Yuan'guang, 98-9  
 Bai Zaixing, 578–79  
 Bai-lou (white storey city/Datong), 320, 411  
 Baibars, 523  
 Baida'er, 482–83, 572  
 Baidar (Baidar/Baydar), 442, 482–483, 491–96, 501  
 Baideng, 319–20, 410–11  
 Baigongmiao, 468–69  
 Baigongmiao Battle, 471  
 Baiju, 452, 507, 520–21  
 Bai-maan, 98, 513, 516, 594  
 Baiman tribes, 180, 513, 517, 593  
 Bai-na-ke-te (Fenekt), 429, 435  
 Baishinkhor-dogshin, 374  
 Baishui-jiang River, 566  
 Baiteng-jiang River, 210, 225, 684  
 Bai-zhu's Mongol, 637  
 Ba-la, 356, 445–47, 508, 687–89  
 Balaji, 236, 264–66  
 Balasagun, 398, 403, 405, 425–26, 428  
 Balawaristan, 51, 94  
 Balhae (Bohai, Po'hai, Parhae), 71, 152, 301, 308  
 Balkh (Ban-le-he), 345, 353, 431–32, 434–35, 438–39, 441–43, 558  
 Balkh rebellion in April, 442-43  
 Baluwan, 441–42, 444

*Bamboo Annals*, 1–4, 13, 17, 86, 293–94  
 Bamiyan (Bami'an), 441–43  
 Bamiyan Siege, 441–42  
 Baraq, 447, 687–89  
 Barchuk, 403–4, 406  
 Barguzin River, 388, 397  
 Bashkirs, 483  
 Batanes, 475, 632, 639, 642, 646, 685  
 Battle of Ain Jalut Plains, 523  
 Battle of Baghdad, 521  
 Battle of Baiteng-jiang, 210  
 Battle of Bamiyan, 442  
 Battle of Beruwan, 442, 444  
 Battle of Boxiang, 146  
 Battle of Buzgala, 438  
 Battle of Caishi, 546  
 Battle of Changle, 38  
 Battle of Chanyuan, 233  
 Battle of Chernigov, 489  
 Battle of Chongqing, 638  
 Battle of Qingliuguan, 221  
 Battle of Chu3zhou (A.D. 1130), 535  
 Battle of Daohuigu, 461  
 Battle of Ko'an, 675  
 Battle of Kozelsk, 487  
 Battle of Diaoyucheng, 524, 600  
 Battle of Dongduyuan, 31  
 Battle of Gaoliang-he, 231  
 Battle of Gaoping, 211  
 Battle of Gaoyi, 145  
 Battle of Gran, 502  
 Battle of Gui'de, 468  
 Battle of Hemi, 415  
 Battle of Heshangyuan, 535  
 Battle of Hong'an, 675  
 Battle of Huan'erzui, 322, 409–10  
 Battle of Iron Gate (Buzgala), 433  
 Battle of Jia-he, 151  
 Battle of Jiaoshan, 631  
 Battle of Jinn'anzhai, 159-160  
 Battle of Jiuqu, 35  
 Battle of Kiev, 489  
 Battle of Khalka River, 389  
 Battle of Khatun, 307  
 Battle of Koyiten, 398  
 Battle of Krakow, 501  
 Battle of Kunlun'guan, 238  
 Battle of Lengjing, 71  
 Battle of Liaodongcheng, 31  
 Battle of Liegnitz in Poland, 500  
 Battle of Linshi, 601  
 Battle of Luzhou, 637  
 Battle of Mahujiang, 593-5, 616, 636  
 Battle of Mangshan, 56  
 Battle of Migukou, 413  
 Battle of Minkas, 488-9  
 Battle of Mohi, 495, 498, 500–501  
 Battle of Moyanxia, 277  
 Battle of North Africa, 522  
 Battle of Olomouc, 496  
 Battle of Oyrat, 426  
 Battle of Pereg, 498  
 Battle of Polaniec, 492  
 Battle of Poyang Lake, 713  
 Battle of Qaili and Qaimich, 428  
 Battle of Qingkou, 136  
 Battle of Qingyeyuan, 579–80, 582  
 Battle of Reka Sit, 485  
 Battle of Rodna and Bistrita, 497  
 Battle of Ryazan, 484  
 Battle of Sajo River, 498  
 Battle of Sanchuankou, 237, 240, 271  
 Battle of Sandomir and Kraków, 494  
 Battle of Sanfengshan (three peaks' mountain), 461  
 Battle of Shilingguan, 213  
 Battle of Talas, 51, 94  
 Battle of Taloqan, 440  
 Battle of Thirteen Wings, 385  
 Battle of Tieni, 387  
 Battle of Tursko, 492  
 Battle of Voronezh, 484  
 Battle of Urganchi, 435  
 Battle of Vladimir, 485  
 Battle of Wahlstadt, 495  
 Battle of Wumashan, 561  
 Battle of Xiangyang-Fancheng, 617  
 Battle of Xianren-guan, 535  
 Battle of Xianzi-guan, 682  
 Battle of the Shiri-dao Island, 544  
 Battle of Yangcheng, 231  
 Battle of Yangping-guan, 582  
 Battle of Yashan (Yaishan), 644  
 Battle of Yehuling, 318, 321–23, 411, 413  
 Battle of Zhubi-shan, 298  
 Battles of Bamiyan and Beruwan, 441  
 Battles of Wahlstadt and Mohi, 495  
 Battles of Xiangyang and Zaoyang, 346, 562  
 Battles of Xuande and Dexing-fu, 327  
 Batu, 483–84, 487–92, 495, 499–504, 506–10, 687–88  
 Batu's biography, 483–84, 486, 489–90  
 Batu's brother, 504, 507, 523, 687  
 Batu's court, 452, 505  
 Bayan, 510, 624, 631–34, 667–68, 689–90, 692

- Bayanchur Qaghan, 400  
 Ba-ya-wu-ti (Bayad or Bayagud) clan, 9, 368, 399  
 Baybars, 523  
 Baydar, 491  
 Bei-jing, 11–14, 217, 227, 230–32, 253, 330, 332–33, 342, 344, 414–16  
 Bei-lu, 287, 291, 313, 359, 361, 368, 453, 561  
 Beiluo-tiemu'er, 699, 705, 709–10, 717–18  
 Bei-suo, 703–5  
 Beiting (northern court), 50, 53, 100, 103, 106–9  
 Beiting Siege, 104  
 Bela IV, 499–503  
 Belgorod, 484  
 Berke, 486–88, 504–5, 523, 660  
 Beruan (Beruwan), 441–46  
 Beruwan summer break, 442  
 Beshbalik, 404, 425, 507, 510–11  
 Besuds, 315, 374  
 Bhatu/Badu, 481, 483, 503, 506–7, 509  
 Bi Gui, 12–3  
 Bi Jin, 531  
 Bi Shian, 234  
 Bi Shiduo, 112, 116, 126  
 Bi Xianfu, 670  
 Bi Yuan, 305, 309–10, 379, 471  
 Bi Zaiyu, 550–52  
 Bistritz, 497, 499  
 Bian Biao, 640  
 Bian Hao's Southern Tang, 188  
 Bian-jing (Bianliang/Kaifeng), 249–51, 285, 331–34, 338–39, 341–42, 415–16, 422, 462–63, 465–70, 472–73, 480–81, 529  
 Bianzhou, 115, 122, 133–35, 155–56  
 Big Snow Mountain, 438–39, 441–43  
 Bi Gui, 12–13  
 Bilege, 374, 383  
 Bilge, 28, 374, 383  
 Binzhou siege, 147  
 biography on Soong ministers Hong Zikui, 552  
 biography on Mongol General Zhen-hai, 321  
 biography on Subetei, 420–21  
 Black Da-da, 291, 366, 368, 376  
 Black Khitay, 428  
 Black Mywa, 98, 513  
     Jiandu-maan barbarians, 677  
     black teeth barbarians, 516, 593–94  
     white teeth barbarians, 516, 593–94  
 Black teeth barbarians, 516  
 Blackwater Jurchens, 298–99  
 Blue Horde, 488  
 Bocard, 442, 444  
 Bocek, 493, 498  
 Bodunchar, 370, 372, 376, 389, 401  
 Bo-er-jie, 397, 401, 423  
 Bogu/Mo-ch'o, 47–48, 69–72, 95, 299  
 Bohai, 18, 152–53, 291–92, 296–98, 301  
 Bohai prefectural kingdom, 71  
 Bohemia, 491, 494–96  
 Bolad-chingsang, 363, 659, 665, 688  
 Bolad-temur, 699, 707, 709–10, 717–18  
 Bo-lan-ni-ye (Polaniec on the Czarna Hancza), 492–93  
 Boleslaw, 493–94, 501  
 Bolohoveni people, 484  
 Bo'orcu, 397, 401, 405, 423  
 Bori Tibetan, 282, 406  
 Borjigid, 370, 377  
 Borjigin Mongols, 377–79, 384, 387  
 Boroqul, 397, 401, 419–20, 423  
 Borte, 387–88, 397  
 Boxiang Battle, 144–45  
 Bo-yan, 624, 631–34, 641, 698  
 Boyan and A-zhu's Mongol, 627, 632  
 Boyla city, 404, 415, 423  
 Brasov, 499  
 Bratislava, 496, 501–2  
 Breslau, 493–95  
 Bryansk, 484, 490, 504  
 Buddha, 537, 541, 702, 711  
 Buddhism, 38, 62, 80, 420, 663–64, 673–74  
 Budugeng, 12–13, 365  
 Buiruk-khan, attacked, 389–90, 394  
 Bujek, 483, 486, 498–500  
 Bujia Khan, 28  
 Bukhara, 345, 426, 429–30, 433–34, 439  
 Bukovina, 497  
 Bulgar city, 483  
 Bulgaria, 504, 510, 688  
 Bulgars, 449–50, 483–84, 486  
 Bulghar (Bulia'er) posts, 477, 483  
 Buri, 483, 487–89, 498–99, 502, 510  
 Buri-boko, 386  
 Burkhan Khaldun Mountain, 371, 388, 420  
 Burma, 80–81, 104–5, 636, 669, 675, 677–80  
 Burma and Thailand, 81  
 Buwusu, 686, 692  
 Buzgala, 433, 435, 438–39, 443  
 Buzheke (Bujek/Ba-chuo/Habichi), 483, 488, 493, 498  
 Byzantine Emperor Tiberius II, 26

## C

- Cai Baer and Wang Shaner, 474  
 Cai Bian, 245

Cai Dongfan, 36, 372, 424, 431, 449  
 Cai Gong'an, 714  
 Cai Jing, 244–46, 248, 529, 552  
 Cai Jingsi, 143  
 Cai Jiong, 10  
 Cai Shao, 40–41  
 Cai Xide, 52–54, 56  
 Caishi, 115, 117, 195, 546  
 Caizhou, 122, 470–71, 473–75, 480–81, 538–39, 567–69, 575–77  
 Caizhou, last Jurchen stronghold, 217, 228, 257  
     last Jurchen emperor Jin-modi Wanyan Chenglin, 466  
 Caizhou Prefecture, 468, 476  
 calendars, 251–52, 477, 665, 673  
     *Daming-li* calendar, 251, 477  
     *Gengwu-Xizheng-yuan-li* calendar with longitude differential, 477  
     Islamic calendar, 434–36, 438, 440, 490–1  
     *Miao-taijian-Li* calendar, 649  
     *Shoushi-li* calendar, 613, 665, 673  
 calendrical astrology, 649  
 caliph, 452, 506, 522  
 caliphate, 95, 521–22  
 Cambodia, 642, 680  
 camels, 97, 305–6, 404–6, 425  
 Cangzhou, 132–33, 325, 329–30, 347, 421, 610–11  
 Canton, 75, 115–17, 208–9, 218, 238, 643–47  
 Cao An'guo, 641  
 Cao Bin, 182–3, 195, 212, 225, 232, 239, 515  
 Cao Can, 236, 264  
 Cao Cao, 7–8, 10–13, 66, 296  
 Cao Cheng, 531, 536, 541  
 Cao Cunshi, 119–20  
 Cao Dechang, 185  
 Cao Fu, 250  
 Cao Fuchou, 718  
 Cao Jiseng, 284  
 Cao Jushun, 101, 240, 268  
 Cao Liangchen, 720  
 Cao Lingzhong, 100  
 Cao Liushun, 714  
 Cao Liying, 235  
 Cao Quanzheng, 116–17  
 Cao Renshi, 69  
 Cao Shuaifan, 514  
 Cao Wei, 236, 266–7  
 Cao Wenyong, 576  
 Cao Wei Emperor Mingdi, 13  
 Cao Wei Emperor Wendi, 10, 12, 13  
 Cao Xun, 542  
 Cao Yanzuo, 136, 190  
 Cao Yijin, 153, 265  
 Cao Youwan, 357, 566–67, 578–82, 585  
 Cao Youwen, 357, 564–67, 578–82, 585  
 Cao Zheng, 467, 568  
 Cao'e-jiang River, 534  
 Carpathian Mountain pass of Veretsky, 491  
 Carpathian Mountains, 491–92, 498–500  
 Caspian, 353–54, 426, 431–32, 436, 438–39, 447–50, 484  
 castles, 317, 319, 408, 439–41, 522  
 catalpa, 177  
 catapults, 489, 492, 500, 502, 575–76  
 Cathay, 7, 15–16, 714, 725  
 Cattaro, 503  
 Caucasus, 427, 442, 447–48, 451, 488–89, 521  
 Caucasus campaign, 427  
 cavalries, 33, 110–12, 118–20, 130–31, 144–46, 156, 462, 534, 541–42, 547–51  
 Cayan-temur/Chaghan-temur, 709  
 Cenadu, 497  
 censorate, 40, 660, 694, 715  
 census, fake, 440, 444, 650–52  
 Central Asia, 84, 106–7, 423–25, 427, 435–40, 442–44, 453–54, 498, 510, 643, 715  
 Central-Eastern Europe, 492, 498  
 Chagatai (Chagadai/ Chaghatai), 319–20, 325–26, 330, 409, 412, 435–36, 441–42, 452, 509–10, 612, 657, 687, 690  
 Chagatai khanate, 510, 657, 659–60, 687–88, 690–91  
 Chaghan-temur, 705, 709–10  
 Cha-ha-er, 573–74, 598  
 Cha-han, 322, 411, 454, 456, 507, 511, 574–76, 585–86, 590  
 Cha-han's biography, 321, 411  
 Cha-han's father, 283, 454  
 Cha-han attacking Fengshengzhou, 327, 413  
 Chahan-tiemu'er, 709–10  
 Chahar Mongol Yungshiyebu-taiji, 373  
 Chaillot River, 498  
 Chai Chun, 677  
 Chai Cun, 112  
 Chai Rong, 167–68, 173, 211, 220–21  
 Chai Shao, 40  
 Chai Su, 705  
 Chai Zaiyong, 191  
 Chai Zongxun, child emperor, 222  
 Chalahai, 316, 374, 383  
 Cha-la, 303  
 Champa, 218, 643–44, 675, 677, 680–81, 685–86  
 Champa king, 677, 680  
 Changzhou, 318–19, 322, 409–10

- Chang'an, 34–37, 51–55, 63–64, 124–25, 131–32, 175–79
- Changqing Peace Accord, 60–61, 74, 76, 111
- Chan-he River, 403–4, 418, 420–21, 423, 425  
*chanyu*, 9–11, 27, 48
- Chanyuan Peace Accord, 233, 237, 246, 249, 253–54 273
- Chanzhou, 147, 227, 234–35, 254
- Chapar, 690
- C-haplogroup paleo-Siberia and paleo-North-Asia people, 2, 9, 369, 381
- C-haplogroup Tungusic people, 383
- Charaqai, 374, 383
- Chebi, 43
- Chen Congren, 716
- Chen Diaoyan, 643–45
- Chen Hongjin, 206–7, 211, 225
- Chen Jinfeng, 204
- Chen Jing, 313, 322, 372, 375–76
- Chen Jingsi, 118–19, 121
- Chen Jingxuan, 64, 119, 176–77
- Chen Jiwei, 153
- Chen Longzhi, 357, 586
- Chen Qingyu, 683–84
- Chen Rixuan, 676–77
- Chen Riyu, 677–78, 682
- Chen Ru, 183
- Chen Shou, 7, 294, 296
- Chen Shouyuan, 203–4
- Chen Shuda, 24
- Chen Sigong, 533
- Chen Tong, 716
- Chen Wang, 206
- Chen Wenlong, 643
- Chen Xiaqing, 550
- Chen Xun, 147
- Chen Yan, 200–201, 204
- Chen Yi, 625
- Chen Yiji, 681, 683–84, 708
- Chen Yin, 565–66
- Chen Yizhong, 626–28, 630–34, 640–44, 668
- Chen Youding, 714–15, 717–19
- Chen Youliang, 703–4, 706, 708–10, 713–15, 717
- Chen Youliang and Zhu Yuanzhang, 710, 713, 715
- Chen Zhao, 629, 632
- Chen Zhensun, 310
- Chen Zhongda, 680
- Chen Zonghai, 589, 716–17
- Chen-Han dynasty, 684, 708
- Chen dynasty, 24
- Chen Emperor Xuandi, 24
- Cheng Changyu, 532
- Chengde, 58, 75–76, 113, 130
- Chengde-jun army and Wang Chuzhi's Yiwu-jun, 148
- Chengde-jun satrap Wang Rong, 125–26
- Chengdu, 104–5, 175–76, 181–83, 582–84, 586, 596, 598, 613–16, 636
- Chengdu-fu-lu circuit, 639, 652
- Chen Geng, 579
- Cheng Pengfei, 624, 684
- Cheng Rui, 136, 178, 183–84, 187, 190
- Cheng Soong, 551
- Chen Guojun, 681, 684
- Cheng Wenhai, 648, 665
- Cheng Yaojin, 33, 35
- Cheng Yuanfeng, 617
- Cheng Zhijie, 33, 35, 40, 44
- Cheng Zun, 702
- Chenqiao-yi, 169, 222
- Chepe, 317–19, 322, 324–25, 414–15, 420–23, 425–28, 431–34
- Chepe's Campaign, 447
- Ch'ergesiman, 404, 406
- Chernigov, 449–50, 485–86, 488–90, 504
- Chi-di barbarians, 4, 6, 22
- Chi-ju, 327
- Chi-lao-wen (Chilaun), 375, 397, 401, 420–21
- Chi-you, 86
- Chifeng, 246–47, 256, 279–80, 302–3
- Chiji, 29
- Chiledu, 387
- Chimin tribes, 404, 456
- Chinese garrisons in Turkestan, 60, 76
- Chinese Turkestan, 76–8, 83–84, 88, 306–7, 344, 398–99, 403–6, 420, 423, 426–7
- Chinqia, 477, 506–8
- Chiremon, 510
- Chizhan-hechongshan, 454
- Chizhan Hexi, 285–86, 340, 355–56, 467, 555
- Chizhan Hui, 534
- Chizhou, 116–17, 191–92, 625, 627, 705
- Chmielnik, 492–94
- Chong E4, 242–43, 272, 274–76
- Chongqing (Chungking), 184, 518, 524–5, 584–87, 593, 596, 613–14, 602, 620, 635, 637–39
- Chormaqan, 430, 441, 451–52
- Chouci, 42, 44, 47, 107–8
- chronicles  
*Compendium of Chronicles*, 322  
*Dalimil*, 487  
*Ecclesiastical Chronicle*, 311  
*Historiae Regni Boiemiae*, 497  
*Ipatiev Chronicle*, 485

- Jami'al-tawrikh* (collected chronicles, & history of the tribes), 363
- Kronika ceska*, 497
- Povist' vremennykh lit*, 489
- Pribik Pulkava of Radenin*, 497
- South Russian Ipatiev Chronicle*, 485
- The Annales sancti Pantaleonis*, 496
- The Chronicle of Ibn al-Athir for the Crusading Period from al-Kamil fi 'I-Ta'rikh*, 444
- The Galician-Volhynian Chronicle*, 489
- The Hypatian Chronicle*, 489
- The Kyiv Chronicle*, 489
- The Laurentian Chronicle*, 485
- The Nikon Chronicle*, 489
- Chu-he (Chuy) River, 404, 418, 425, 427-8, 431
- Chuluo Khan, 28-29, 36-37
- Chumi tribes, 106-7
- Chung-tu (Zhongdu/Peking), 334, 416
- Chuyue, 75, 106-8, 170
- Chuyue and Chumi tribes, 106-8
- Chuy valley, 306, 420, 425-26
- Cila'un, 397, 401, 420-21
- Cilicia, 452, 523
- Circassians, 448, 488
- civil service exams
- Khubilai taking Tudan Gonglü's opinion to forbid exams, 664
  - Ogedei's exams, 478
  - Yuan Emperor Renzong launching exams, 666
  - Soong dynasty's reform on the exam system, 237
  - Shundi's revoking exams at Boyan's advice, 701
  - Sui Emperor Yangdi's initiating exams, 30
  - Tang Emperor Taizong's expanding exams, 38
  - Tangut exams, 283
  - Wang Anshi's reform to add the Legalist theory to the classic and oratory exams, 243
- Cizhou, 127, 147, 167, 250, 343
- cliff road, 565, 588-89
- Clissa, first attacked, 503
- Confucius, 219, 293-94, 648, 673
- Cracow, 492
- Crimea, 26, 364, 448-49, 488
- Cris River, 497
- Croatia, 501-3
- Cuan Chongdao, 111
- Cuipingkou, 319, 410
- Cuman khan Khotyan, 500
- Cuman mercenary army's attacking Olomous, 496
- Cuman name, 487
- Cuman rebellion, 484, 504
- Cumans, 448-49, 483, 488, 491, 499
- currency, 478, 660-61, 699, 701
- ## D
- Da Zuorong (Dae Joo-young), 70-71
- Da'an, 346, 556, 558, 566, 578, 580-82
- Da'anshan Mountain, 141
- Dachanghe, 180
- Dachangyuan, 362, 459, 464, 469, 479
- Da-da (Dadan/Tatars), 8-9, 66-67, 114, 119, 291, 306-8, 311-14, 316, 364-65, 367-8, 374-7, 380-83, 391
- Dadu, 606, 635, 661-2, 696-99, 709-10, 718, 720-21
- Dadu-he River, 92, 103, 111, 117, 180, 515, 590-91, 593
- Dagur people, 365
- Dahai-si, 33
- Da-Han-jun puppet troops, 544
- Dahe Jingzhong, 68-69
- Dahe Kuge, 68-69
- Dahe-shi clan, 73
- Dahuo-cheng, 587, 600
- Dahuoshan, 596, 599
- Dai-da-er, 593-4
- Dai Keshi, 111
- Dai Shou, 722
- Dai Siyuan, 150
- Dai Zhou, 40
- Dai Zhitai, 628
- Dai En, 642
- Dai prefectures, 37, 43, 110, 391
- Dai-wang barbarian king, 6
- Daizhou, 47, 92, 114, 118-20, 159, 325, 342, 344
- Dai-zhou, 332
- Dali, 121, 511-17, 589-90, 595-96, 599, 677-79
- Da-liang, 161
- Dali campaign, 515, 524, 590
- Dali-guo emperor, 238
- Dali king, 514
- Dali kingdom, 366, 513-14, 516, 589-90
- Dalimashili, 708
- Dali state, 105, 180, 588, 590
- Daluobian, 27
- Da-menggu-guo, 309, 376, 419
- Da-Menggu-guo state's titular name, 376
- Damghan, 432, 441, 447, 519
- Daming, 332, 334-35, 343, 347-48, 358, 529, 532, 545, 560
- Da-mo-lou, 297
- Dangxiang, 79, 89-90, 96-97, 153, 259-61, 405
- Danube, 488-89, 492, 497, 499, 500-2, 504
- Danylo, 504

- Da-Qi emperor, 121-2  
 Da-Soong dynasty, 713, 717  
 Da-Soong king Haan Lin'er, 717  
*Da-Soong Xuanhe Yi Shi*, 539  
 Da-Yuan dynastic title, 724  
 Da-yuan-guo country name, 302  
 Da Yuan title, 663  
 Da-Yuan dynastic title, 724  
 Da-yuan-guo country name, 302  
 Da-Yuan title, 663  
 Da-Yue (Vietnam), 209  
 Da-Yue (Vietnam), 209  
 Dazhou, 583-84, 600, 615-16, 637  
 Da-Zhou dynasty, 712  
 Da-zhou-ren's Jurchens, 547  
 Da-Yan emperor, 56  
 Da-Zhou dynasty, 712  
 Da-zhou-ren's Jurchens (Xiao Qi, Pucha-tumu and  
     Da-zhou-ren's turncoat Jurchen army), 547  
 Dasan-guan, 345, 554  
 Dashengdian, 321  
 Dashi-badulu, 703, 705-9  
 Dashi-linya, 306, 420, 425-26  
 Dashi-tiemu'er (Dashi-timur), 705  
 Dashi-linya [Yelü-dashi's ordo], 420  
 Datou Khan, 26-28  
 Dawa, 690  
 Daye Era, 32  
 Dazhou, 583-84, 600, 615-16, 637  
 De'an-fu, 573, 617-18, 625  
 delegation to Japan, 672  
 Dené-Caucasian, 344  
 Denglzhou, 197, 201, 329, 335-36  
 Deng4zhou, 524, 537-39, 568, 577, 591-92, 600  
 Deng Ai, 154, 158  
 Deng Fu, 583  
 Deng Jiyun, 127, 129, 145-46  
 Deng Keming, 714  
 Deng Shaomi, 532  
 Deng Weishan, 633  
 Deng Wenlong, 318, 409, 550-1  
 Deng Yu, 720  
 Dengshuzi, 25  
 Dengzhou, 461-63, 471, 473-74, 567-68, 572-74,  
     703-5  
 Derbent, 448, 488  
 Desna River, 490  
 Dexing, 324-25, 327-28, 337-8, 412-14  
 Dezhou, 132, 141, 335, 343  
 D-haplogroup people, 86  
 Diaoyucheng, 524-25, 585, 587-88, 591, 596, 600-  
     602, 637-39  
 Diaoyu-cheng siege, 349, 592, 600, 602, 636  
 Die-la, 73, 77, 311, 326, 399  
 Diezhou, 91, 96, 268, 275  
 Di-lie, 311, 380, 399, 414  
 Ding Daquan, 597, 599, 603-5, 617  
 Ding Buling (Dinh Bo Linh)  
 Ding Haoli, 720  
 Ding Hui, 127, 137  
 Ding Jin, 531  
 Ding Lian (Dinh Lien), 225  
 Ding Pu, 583  
 Ding Pulang, 704  
 Ding Sheng, 561  
 Ding Shizhen, 722  
 Ding Shun, 628  
 Ding Weiqing, 236, 265  
 Ding Yanhui, 144  
 Ding Yu, 346, 558  
 Ding Zhen, 235  
 Dingbian, 287, 455  
 Dingchuanzhai Campaign, 240, 272, 274  
 Dingjiazhou, 606, 619, 627-28  
 Dingjiazhou Battle, 625  
 Dingling, 17, 297  
 Dingxi, 276, 285-87, 355-56, 555  
 Dingxi campaign, 721  
 Dingxizhou, 284, 320, 340, 555  
 Ding-xue, 321-22, 323, 410  
 Dinh dynasty, 210, 225  
 Di-Qiang people, 5  
 Djerdin, 444  
 Dlugosz, Jan, 492-96  
 Dmitri, 491  
 Dnieper River, 449-50, 488, 490, 689  
 Dniester River, 449  
 Don, 484, 490  
 Dong Bi, 13  
 Dong Chang, 136, 189, 191, 196, 201  
 Dong Cheng, 544  
 Dong Chengyan, 95  
 Dong Chongzhi, 104-5  
 Dong Hanxun, 112  
 Dong Huai, 514, 591, 605  
 Dong Jun, 349, 525  
 Dong Juyi, 346  
 Dong Pengfei, 566  
 Dong Qin, 56  
 Dong Si'an, 206-7  
 Dong Shixuan, 623  
 Dong Shiyuan, 641  
 Dong Songchen, 599, 605  
 Dong Tuanxiao, 704



Dong Wenbing, 525, 590, 603-4, 611, 618-20, 623-24, 627, 630-32, 634, 642-3, 657, 659, 661  
 Dong Wenqi, 159-60  
 Dong Wenwei, 591-2  
 Dong Wenxuan, 685  
 Dong Wenyong, 349, 525, 604, 664, 692  
 Dong Wenzhong, 663  
 Dong Xian, 536, 538  
 Dong Yanbi, 64, 134  
 Dong You, 568  
 Dong Zhan (Tibetan Gu-si-luo's son), 268-9, 275  
 Dong Zhang, 150-4, 157-8, 182  
 Dong Zhao, 346, 556  
 Dong Zhuo, 83  
 Dong Zongben, 220  
 Dong Zunhui, 223  
 Dong-chuan, 176-77, 637, 657  
 Donghu, 6-7, 14-5, 67, 255, 293, 295-96  
 Dong-jing, 325, 327, 414, 417, 540-41, 670  
 Dong-maan, 103-4  
 Dongping, 150-51, 347-48, 351, 353, 358, 468-69, 558, 560, 661-62  
 Dongping xing-tai office, 348, 421  
 Dongsheng, 286, 302, 305, 320, 353  
 Dongshengzhou, 284, 319, 325, 412  
 Dong-xia, 258, 339, 344, 417-18  
 Dongxin-men, 524, 600  
 Dongzhou, 212, 225, 671  
 Dorben (Dorban), 385, 387, 389-90, 394-95, 398  
 Dorbent, 389-90  
 Dou Jiande, 29, 32-35, 37  
 Dou Mo, 511-12, 609, 660  
 Dou Shenbao, 264  
 Dou Xian, 9-10  
 Dou Xingshi, 177  
 dowager-empress, 45-46, 159, 532-33, 626, 633-34  
 Dowager-empress Wei-hou, 49  
 Dowager-empress Ye-li-shi's title, 241, 272  
 Drava River, 502  
 Du Bin, 94  
 Du Binke, 72  
 Du Chong, 531-4, 702  
 Du Chonggui, 162  
 Du Chongwei, 162-3, 165, 172  
 Du Chuke, 41  
 Du Fuwei, 33, 38  
 Du Gao, 557, 564, 574-6, 586  
 Du Guangting, 148, 228  
 Du Hong, 135-7, 184, 187, 190  
 Du Hongshou, 156  
 Du Hongsui, 165  
 Du Hui, 52  
 Du Jianhui, 196  
 Du Leng, 196  
 Du Qu, 564  
 Du Rangneng, 131, 178  
 Du Rou, 592  
 Du Ruhui, 39  
 Du Shizhong, 673-4  
 Du Shu, 576, 616  
 Du Tao, 111  
 Du Tingyin, 143-4, 261  
 Du Xiu, 333, 416  
 Du Xiwang, 95  
 Du Xunhe, 189  
 Du Yan, 238  
 Du Yan'gui, 232  
 Du Yanqiu, 146, 155, 156  
 Du Ying and Du Shisheng, 603  
 Du You, 51, 82, 87, 111  
 Du Yu, 150  
 Du Yuanying, 61, 104  
 Du Zai, 104  
 Du Zhan, 472  
 Du Zheng, 472  
 Du Zundao, 702  
 Duan family, 513, 677, 722  
 Duan-he River, 484, 490  
 Duan Degong, 722  
 Duan Jianwei, 98  
 Duan Jiong, 98, 513  
 Duan Ning, 146, 149-52, 249  
 Duan Qiuqian, 116-7  
 Duan Shi, 517, 679, 722  
 Duan Siping, 105, 180, 513  
 Duan Wenchang, 60  
 Duan Wenchu, 113, 119  
 Duan Wenchu, 113, 119  
 Duan Xingzhi, 517  
 Duan Xinjuri, 517, 678-79  
 Duan Xiongxing, 514  
 Duan Xiushi, 99  
 Duan Yanmo, 116, 183  
 Duan Yi, 236, 264  
 Duan Yuanjian, 597, 599  
 Duan Yanmo, 116, 183  
 Duan Zheng, 550  
 Duan Zhengxing, 513  
 Duan Zhengyan, 513  
 Duan Zhilian, 513  
 Duan Zhixing, 513, 516-17, 590, 593  
 Duan Zhixuan, 40  
 Duan Ziguang, 52  
 Duan Zongbang, 105

Duanping Northern Expedition, 571, 573  
*dubojilie*, 255, 300, 304, 379  
 Dugu Sun, 137  
 Dugu Xin, 21  
 Dugu Xiude, 37  
 Duji Qianjianu (Duji Qianjianu), 318–19, 409  
 Duji Sizhong, 317–19, 409  
 Duke Canghai-gong Wang Fu2, 352  
 Duke Frederick, 502  
 Duke Hengshan-gong Wu Xian, 352, 424  
 Duke Kuo-er-ji, attacked, 486  
 Duke Mieszko II, 494–95  
 Duke of Opole-Racibórz, 493–94  
 Duke of Qiuchi, 85  
 Duke Shangdang-gong, 354  
 Duke Tang-guo-gong Li Yuan, 29  
 Duke Yishui-gong Jing Anmin, 352  
 Dulan Khan, 27–28  
 Du-na River, 297  
 Dunbinai, 374  
 Duni-jiang River, 605  
 Duo-ben-ba-yan, 371  
 Duo-ben-mie-er, 371  
 Duolu Khan, 44, 107–8  
 Duo-lu-ban, 385, 387, 390, 394–95, 398  
 Duolu tribes, five, 42, 44, 107–8  
 Duong Dinh Nghe, 209  
 Dusong-guan, 631–32, 667  
 Duwa, 447, 624, 689–90

## E

Eastern and Western Turks, 27, 44  
 Eastern Hu, 5–9, 14–15, 66–67, 291, 295, 383  
 Eastern Jinn, 85, 87, 217, 228, 257  
 Eastern Jurchen, 344, 417, 458, 478  
 Eastern Kara-khanid, 306, 425  
 Eastern Khitan, 308, 374  
 Eastern Khitan Dong-dan Kingdom, 666  
 Eastern Tibetan, 268  
 Eastern Tibeto-Burmans, 81  
 Eastern Turkic Khanate, 41–42, 50  
 Eastern Turks, 27–29, 40–42, 47–48, 91, 106–7  
 Eastern Xia, 258, 339, 344, 417–18, 477–78  
 Eastern Xianbei, 8, 12–14, 67  
 Eastern Yellow River Bend, 2–4, 6, 167, 280, 285, 357  
 Eastern Yi, 293–94, 381  
 Eastern Zhou, 4–5, 85–86  
 East Fuyu, 297  
 East Khitan state, 301  
 E-da-la, 345, 428–29, 435

Eger, 497, 500  
 Egypt, 522–23  
 Eight-surname Oghuz Tribes, 400  
 E-ji-na, 270  
 E'ke, 345  
 Elburz Mountains, 440  
 Eleven-surname Oghuz, 400  
 Eliebuge, 598  
 Eljigidei, 507, 509–10  
 Emil River, 306, 425, 688  
 emissaries. *See also* Tang emissaries, Soong emissaries, Jurchen emissaries, Mongol emissaries.  
 Li Bangrui to Southern Soong, 460, 563–64  
 Soong Daobi, 177  
 Wang Ji to Soong, 474, 572, 577  
 Wanyan Nushen, 459  
 Wulengsimou to Soong, 539  
 Emperor Aidi, 63, 170  
 Emperor Baldwin, 504  
 Emperor Chai Rong, 167  
 emperor Chen Guangbing, 676  
 Emperor Chengzong, 685, 692  
     received, 692  
 emperor Chen Rixuan, 676  
 Emperor Chongsheng-sixiao-huangdi, 698  
 Emperor Chongzong, 269, 279  
 Emperor Chudi, 162–63  
 Emperor Da-Bohai-huangdi, 302  
 Emperor Daizong, 56–57, 76, 96  
 Emperor Da-Min-huang, 205  
 Emperor Dasheng-daming-tian-huangdi, 78  
 Emperor Dasheng-huangdi, 302  
 Emperor Dejong, 58–61, 76, 100, 103  
 Emperor Di-bing, 646, 668  
 Emperor Duanzong, 641–42, 668  
 Emperor Duzong, 617, 626, 635, 666  
 Emperor Duzong's Concubine Yang-shu-fei, 642  
 Emperor Gaozong, 44–46, 91–92, 529, 532–35, 542–44, 546  
 Emperor Gaozong, 43–44  
 Emperor Gaozu, 38, 41, 47, 68, 180, 210  
 Emperor Gongdi, 626, 634–35, 640, 648, 667–68  
 Emperor Gong-huangdi, 169  
 Emperor Guangwu-di, 122, 141  
 Emperor Guo Wei, 211  
 Emperor Hanxing, 332, 416  
 Emperor Houzhu, 182  
 Emperor Huanzong, 269, 282  
 Emperor Huizong, 244–46, 248, 251, 278–79, 529  
 Emperor Huizong and Emperor Qinzong, 244  
 Emperor Huizong/Shizu, 211

Emperor Jin-aizong, 357  
 Emperor Jingdi, 15, 22-4  
 Emperor Jingyan-di, 643  
 Emperor Jingzong, 60-1, 204-5, 267, 269  
 Emperor Jinshan-bai-yi-tianzi, 265  
 Emperor Jin Xuanzong, 329  
 Emperor Jin-zhangzong, 313-15  
 Emperor Justinian, 26  
 Emperor Liang-di, 39  
 emperor Liao-sheng-zong, 234  
 Emperor Li Congke, 160  
 emperor Li Cunxu, 156  
 Emperor Lingdi, 10-11  
 Emperor Li Renxiao, 282, 405  
 Emperor Li Siyuan, 186  
 Emperor Liu Bang, 7, 12  
 Emperor Liu Chong, 212  
 Emperor Liu Jiyuan, 212-13, 226, 253, 263  
 emperor Liu Jun, 212, 226, 263  
 Emperor Liu Yan, 202  
 Emperor Li Yuan, 29  
 Emperor Lizong, 575-6, 605-6, 609, 615-17,  
 635, 661  
 Emperor Mindi, 158-9  
 Emperor Mingdi, 23-4, 40, 164  
 Emperor Mingzong, 89, 153, 155-58, 182, 696-98  
 Emperor Modi, 159  
 Emperor Muzong, 60-62, 76, 166  
 Emperor Nangxiao, 268  
 Emperor Ningzong, 543, 550, 697-98  
 Emperor Qinzong, 244, 248, 250-51, 539  
 Emperor Rang-huangdi, 193  
 Emperor Renhui-huangdi, 238  
 Emperor Renzong, 227, 237, 242, 254, 682, 685,  
 693-95  
 Emperor Ruizong, 46, 49, 93, 167  
 Emperor Shaodi, 640, 644, 647  
 Emperor Shengwu, 457  
 Emperor Shengzong Chen Huang, 676, 681  
 Emperor Shenyuan (Yesugei), 375  
 Emperor Shenzong, 242, 244, 248, 269, 407  
 Emperor Shihuangdi, 7  
 Emperor Shizu, 211, 692  
 Emperor Shizu-shi, 269  
 Emperor Shundi, 371, 697-700, 702-3, 706-7, 717-  
 18, 720-21  
 Emperor Shunzong, 59, 76  
 Emperor Shunzong and Emperor Xianzong, 60  
 Emperor Jingzong, 62  
 Emperor Soong-lizong, 552  
 Emperor Soong Zhenzong, 236  
 Emperor Suzong, 53-57, 75, 96, 108, 132, 170  
 Emperor Taidingdi, 696-97  
 Emperor Taizong, 16, 40-44, 46-47, 68, 90, 108,  
 211-13, 229-31, 239, 267, 298  
 Emperor Taizu, 169, 174, 201, 210-11, 229, 262, 269  
 Emperor Taizu-yuanming-huangdi, 310  
 Emperor Tang-taizong, 68  
 Emperor Tang-xuan-zong, 599  
 Emperor Tianshundi, 696-97  
 Emperor Tianxidi, 246-47, 256, 280, 303  
 Emperor Tianyuandi/Tuogusi-tiemu'er/Uskhal, 22,  
 698, 724  
 Emperor Tianzuodi, 79, 255-6, 301, 303, 305, 307  
 Emperor Tuoba Hong, 21  
 Emperor Wang Jipeng, 205  
 Emperor Wang Yan, 181  
 Emperor Wanyan Aguda, 379  
 Emperor Wendi, 24, 27-28, 291, 686  
 Emperor Wenzong, 60-61, 695, 697-98  
 Emperor Wudi, 9, 11, 84, 86, 295-96  
 Emperor Wu-huangdi, 188, 192  
 Emperor Wuxuan, 119  
 Emperor Wuzong, 61-2, 400, 693, 696-7  
 Emperor Xia-jing-zong, 241, 272  
 Emperor Xiandi, 12-13, 61, 83  
 Emperor Xiangzong, 269, 282, 405  
 Emperor Xianzong, 59-61, 76, 269, 509  
 Emperor Xiaojing, 46  
 Emperor Xiaowudi, 21  
 Emperor Xiaozong, 543, 547-49  
 Emperor Xia-renzong, 287, 455  
 Emperor Xiliang-taizu, 24  
 Emperor Xingzong, 237, 254  
 Emperor Xizong, 62-64, 77, 79, 121-22, 124, 176  
 Emperor Xuandi, 22-24  
 Emperor Xuanzong, 48-53, 55, 62, 72-73, 94-96,  
 328-29  
 Emperor Xue-chan, 515  
 Emperor Yangdi, 28-32, 34, 36  
 invasion of Koryo, 32  
 Emperor Yang Jian, 21, 24  
 Emperor Ye-si-bu, 418  
 Emperor Yindi, 165-66, 173, 182, 211  
 Emperor Yin-guo Wang Yanzheng, 206  
 Emperor Yingzong, 242, 695-97  
 Emperor Yingzong in February, 695-6  
 Emperor Yizong, 62-63, 77, 269, 274  
 Emperor Yuwen Tai, 21  
 Emperor Yuzong, 692  
 Emperor Zhao Bing, 647  
 Emperor Zhaozong, 63-64, 128-29, 131-32, 175-  
 76, 698  
 Emperor Zhaozong, 130

Emperor Zheng Longdan, 180  
 Emperor Zheng Renmin, 209  
 Emperor Zhenzong, 230, 235, 245, 264  
 Emperor Zhezong, 243–44, 246, 532, 534, 548  
 Emperor Zhongzong, 45–49, 93  
 Emperor Zhou-shizong, 168–69, 174, 182, 220, 222  
 Emperor Zhuangzong, 151–53, 155, 157–58, 183, 219  
 Emperor Zhu Yuanzhang, 653  
 Empress Soong-huang-hou, 228  
 Empress Wuhou, 48, 69–70  
 Empress Wu Zetian, 36, 45–48, 92  
 Empress Xiao-tai-hou, 234  
 Empress Zhangsun, 36, 39, 44  
 Enian Khan, 400–401  
 Erbil, 447  
 Erdis, 394, 398, 403–4, 420, 443  
 Erdis River, 394, 398  
 Ergene, 510, 659  
 Erguna River, 17, 67, 367  
 Erhai Lake, 71, 98  
 Erkene-kun Mountains, 370–71, 387  
 Esztergom, 489, 502  
 eunuchs, 58–59, 61–64, 123–24, 134, 176–77, 210–11  
 eunuch Cheng Yuanzhen, 57, 96  
 eunuch Li Fuguo, 54, 56–57  
 eunuch Qi3 Shenhui, 120  
 eunuch Qiu Shiliang, 61–62  
 eunuch Liu Jishu, 64, 132  
 eunuch Wang Zongshi, 62  
 eunuch Tian Lingzhi, 119, 124, 175–77  
 eunuch Tian Lingzi, 63–64, 124, 152, 177  
 eunuch Wang Shoucheng, 60–61  
 eunuch Yang Fugong, 64, 176, 178  
 Euphrates River, 521–22  
 Europe, 442, 451, 482–83, 489, 500, 503, 698–99  
 European campaigns, 483, 491, 499, 509  
 European forgeries, 496  
 European histories, 423, 495  
 exams, 218, 237, 274, 283, 470, 478, 481, 632, 648, 663–64, 666, 694, 701  
 exam system, 663  
 E-yi-duo city, 403–4, 415, 423  
 E'zhou, 135–36, 184, 190, 525, 538, 592, 603–4, 606–7, 624–25, 683–85  
 E'zhou Campaign, 603–4, 618

**F**

F42zhou, 640  
 Fa-lang-ji (Frank), 522  
 Fanakati, Ahmad, 611–12, 664–65, 673, 685, 688  
 Fanchang, 705  
 Fancheng, 573, 575–76, 589, 591–92, 598, 618–23, 667  
 Fan Aineng, 173, 220  
 Fan Chao, 213  
 Fan Chengda, 517, 539, 549  
 Fan Chengjin, 356, 559, 561  
 Fan Chensun, 583  
 Fan Hu, 210  
 Fan Hui, 201, 204  
 Fan Ji, 683–84  
 Fan Jiyong, 473  
 Fan Qiong, 249–51, 532  
 Fan Tong, 539  
 Fan Wenhui, 619–23, 621, 625, 634–35, 667, 674–75  
 Fan Xichao, 101, 109, 170  
 Fan Xin, 571–72  
 Fan Yan'guang, 156, 158, 160–61  
 Fan Zhicheng and Ren Fu, 97  
 Fan Zhongyan, 219, 237–42, 271–72  
 Fan Xichao, 101, 109, 170  
 Fan Yanzhao, 233  
 Fan Yong, 241, 271  
 Fan Yongji, 571, 588  
 Fan Yu, 190  
 Fan Ze, 459  
 Fan Zhen, 242, 474  
 Fan Zhi, 166, 169, 222  
 Fan Zhicheng, 97  
 Fan Zhijing, 704  
 Fang Dacong, 514  
 Fang Guan, 54  
 Fang Guosan, 336  
 Fang Hong, 642  
 Fang Hui, 634  
 Fang Guozhen, 703, 705, 707, 713, 718  
 Fang La, 246, 249, 256, 280  
 Fang Xing, 647  
 Fang Xinru, 552  
 Fang Xuanling, 39–40, 87  
 Fang Yulong, 647  
 Fangzhou, 45, 178, 185, 703–4  
 Fanyang, 54, 56–58, 73, 75, 103, 111, 132, 138  
 Fars, 446, 451  
 Fatima, 506–7  
 Fenekt, 429, 435  
 Feng4zhou, 143–44, 180, 182, 479, 564–66, 577–78  
 Feng Changqing, 52–53  
 Feng Dao, 129, 146, 158–60, 163–64, 167  
 Feng Dayong, 581  
 Feng Deyi (Fengl Deyi), 692  
 Feng Fan, 533  
 Feng Hui, 265

- Feng Guoyong and Feng Guosheng, 711  
 Feng Jinke, 212  
 Feng Jiye, 223  
 Feng Sheng, 721, 723  
 Feng Tianyu, 337-8, 353  
 Feng Wannu, 357  
 Feng Xian, 472  
 Feng Xie, 250  
 Feng Xing, 551  
 Feng Xingxi, 185  
 Feng Yanlu, 193, 206-7  
 Feng Yansi and Feng Yanlu, 193, 195  
 Feng Youshuo, 585  
 Feng Zan, 158  
 Feng Ze, 566  
 Feng Zhifei, 162  
 Fengdula, 462-64, 479, 567  
 Feng-hou, 10  
 Fengjie, 584, 587-89, 615, 639  
 Fengning/Xixiang, 536, 565, 598  
 Fengqiu, 123, 151, 166, 222  
 Fengshengzhou, 303, 321, 327, 413  
 Fengxiang, 64, 124-25, 134-35, 137, 165, 182, 261,  
 287, 355-58, 356-57, 459-60, 478-9, 555,  
 563-65  
 Fengxiang Campaign, 287, 356, 555  
 Fengxiang-jun army, 129, 177  
 Fengxiang rebellion, 159  
*Feng Xian Hong-gang*, 694, 700  
 Fengzhou, 207, 272, 325, 461  
 Feng-zhou, 238, 260, 362, 412  
 Fen-he River, 167, 212, 225  
 Fen-shui River, 36, 159  
 Fergana Valley Campaign, 426  
 Ferghana, 94, 428-29, 435, 665  
 Finno-Ugric Bulgar people, 484  
 Finno-Ugric people, 1-2, 369, 483  
 Finno-Ugric people northwestward, 369  
 First European Campaign, 448  
 Five Dynasties, 88, 106, 108, 123, 138-39, 159, 170-  
 1, 188, 211, 298, 366-68, 399-400  
 Five Nomadic Groups Ravaging China, 14, 83  
 fleet, 184, 616, 618, 646-47, 683-84  
 flower's pistil, 182  
 Flowery Army, 355  
 flowery stones, 246, 248  
 fodder, 359, 363, 368, 497-98  
 Foochow, 225, 627, 634, 640-44  
*footu*, 276, 537, 541  
 Fulyan, 137, 271, 278, 530  
 Fulyan-lu, 241, 243, 245, 277, 530-31  
 Fulzhou, 585, 588, 597, 600-601, 637-39  
 Ful-zhou, 137, 351  
 Fu2zhou, 198-201, 202-7, 640-45, 668, 715-16, 718  
 Fu3-shui River, 127  
 Fu3zhou, 280-81, 314-15, 318-19, 322, 409-10  
 Fu4zhou, 112, 183, 575, 617-8, 625  
 Fu An, 724  
 Fu Bi, 237-38  
 Fu Changchao, 549  
 Fu Cunshen, 130, 146, 148-9  
 Fu Dazhao, 142  
 Fu Gongtuo, 33, 38  
 Fu Jian, 85, 87  
 Fu Qian, 233  
 Fu Wenda, 114  
 Fu Xi, 155, 557  
 Fu Yanqing, 155-56, 159, 161, 163-65, 167  
 Fu Yanqing and Gao Xingzhou, 163-64  
 Fu Yi, 350  
 Fu Youde, 703, 709, 713-14, 718, 720-24  
 Fu Zengxiang, 373  
 Fu-lang, 522  
 Fujian, 115-16, 200-203, 205-6, 642-46, 704,  
 713-17  
 Fuli, 111, 547, 551, 592. 610  
 Fuli Battle, 548  
 Fuping, 137, 535  
 Fuyu, 32, 294, 296, 301  
 Fuyu-cheng city, 79, 153  
 Fuyu people, 13, 291-92, 296-7, 368  
 Fuzhou, 179-80, 184, 186, 203, 205
- ## G
- Gaizhou, 458, 723  
 Galich, 449-50, 486, 491-92  
 Galicia-Volhynia, 449  
 Gan1zhou, 239-40, 266-67, 272, 454, 645  
 Ganjak, 451  
 Gansu, 239-41, 266-68, 272, 361-62, 535-38,  
 721-22  
 Ganzhou, 97, 99-101, 109, 640, 645, 658  
 Gao Baoning, 27  
 Gao Baorong, 166, 186-87  
 Gao Baoyi, 23, 26  
 Gao Baoxu, 186  
 Gao Baoyu, 660  
 Gao Conghui, 186  
 Gao Cunfu, 545  
 Gao He2, 514  
 Gao Huaide, 222-23  
 Gao Jia, 578-79  
 Gao Jian, 31, 95

- Gao Jichang, 179, 183, 185–86, 224  
 Gao Jichong, 24, 28, 186, 188, 224  
 Gao Jingshan, 545  
 Gao Jiong, 24, 28  
 Gao Jiping, 224  
 Gao Jixing, 134, 152, 158, 179–81, 183, 185–86  
 Gao Jizhong, 267  
 Gao Jun, 53  
 Gao Juren, 57, 75  
 Gao Kan, 43-4  
 Gao Kui, 470  
 Gao Kuo (Gao Shi), 99  
 Gao La-ge, 472  
 Gao Liangcheng, 513  
 Gao Lianghui, 456, 511  
 Gao Linggong (Gao Yi4), 283, 406  
 Gao Lishi, 57, 599  
 Gao Long and Gao Arong, 513  
 Gao Maoqing, 135  
 Gao Ming, 476  
 Gao Mingqing, 513  
 Gao Pian, 113, 115–19, 126, 183, 189  
 Gao Qingyi, 308  
 Gao Qinian, 324  
 Gao Qiu, 246  
 Gao Renhou, 119, 176  
 Gao Ruli, 339, 553  
 Gao Shang, 56  
 Gao Shaoyi, 15, 22  
 Gao Shengtai, 180, 513  
 Gao Shida, 32–33  
 Gao Shijie, 621, 625  
 Guo Shilian, 40  
 Gao Shouyue, 330  
 Gao Siji, 130  
 Gao Song, 49  
 Gao Taihe, 514  
 Gao Taiming, Gao Taiyun and Gao Liangcheng, 513  
 Gao Taixiang, 513–14, 516  
 Gao Tianyou, 472  
 Gao Tong, 515  
 Gao Wanxing and Gao Wanjin, 142  
 Gao Wenfu and Gao Anren, 544  
 Gao Wenxi, 114  
 Gao Xianzhi, 51–53, 94–95  
 Gao Xingguai, 146  
 Gao Xingzhong, 357  
 Gao Xingzhou, 160, 163–65  
 Gao Xingzhou and Soong Yanyun, 162  
 Gao Xiuyan, 53  
 Gao Xun, 118, 164  
 Gao Yan and Gao Wei, 196  
 Gao Yanchou, 182  
 Gao Yang, 463  
 Gao Yanhui, 169  
 Gao Yi, 341, 419, 511, 553  
 Gao Yi4, 283, 406  
 Gao Ying, 459-60  
 Gao Yingsong, 632, 634-5  
 Gao Yongchang, 255, 302  
 Gao Yongheng, 276  
 Gao Yongnian, 279  
 Gao Yuan, 24, 32, 193  
 Gao Yue and Gao Yuan, 193  
 Gao Zhiyao, 511  
 Gao Zongyi, 143, 171, 261  
 Gao Zunyu, 244, 275–76  
 Gao-jianu, 723  
 Gaochang, 28, 30, 36, 38, 406  
 Gaochang State, 25, 42, 383  
 Gao-che people, 17, 366  
 Gaoping, 167, 173, 211, 220  
 Gaojipo, 32–33  
 Gaozhou, 330, 359, 593, 646–47  
 Gaoyang-guan, 234  
 Gao-yao-mi, 259  
 Gaoyi, 145  
 Gaoyou, 126, 641–42, 699, 703, 706–7, 712  
 Ge Congzhou, 123, 126, 128, 130–31, 133  
 Ge Fushun, 49  
 Ge Huaimin, 274  
 Ge Ping and Yang Deguang, 350, 557  
 Ge Tieqiang, 349  
 Ge Xiyuan, 45  
 Ge-luo-feng, 98, 111  
 Gelulu, 48, 107  
 Genghis Khan, 17, 282–83, 285, 287, 297, 307, 309,  
 311, 314, 316–20, 323–33, 335, 339, 342–45,  
 347, 350, 353–54, 356–58, 360–65, 367–68,  
 370–75, 377, 384–97, 399, 401–48, 450–51,  
 453–58, 460, 477, 479, 483, 486, 489, 506,  
 510–11, 525, 553, 557–58, 562–63, 569, 606,  
 609, 611–12, 636, 659-60, 662, 669, 673, 690  
 blood-brother Jamuka, 387  
 brother Jochi-Kasar and Wozhen Nayen, 307  
 brother Temuge-Otchigin, 308  
 daughter, 508–9  
 wife Borte, 659  
 Genghis Khan's declaration, 313  
 Genghis Khan's family history, 374  
 Genghis Khan's Kiyat-Borjigin Mongols, 308, 315,  
 370, 380, 387  
 Genghis Khan's life philosophy, 364  
 Genghis Khan's Mengwu people, 371, 391

Genghis Khan's Mongols, 316, 363–64, 375, 377, 381–83  
 Genghis Khan's name, 377  
 Geng Duanyi, 331  
 Geng Jing, 546–47  
 Geng Kui, 10  
 Geng Nanzhong, 249  
 Geng Xun, 541  
 Geng Youliang, 280-1, 530  
 Geng Zaicheng and Geng Bingwen, 711, 713  
 Genoese city of Soldaia, 448  
 Georgia (Jiao'erzhi), 447–48, 450–52, 506–7, 510 attacked, 450  
 Georgian and Armenian army, 447–48  
 Georgians, 447–48, 450–52, 520  
 Gerdkuh fort, 519, 520-1  
 Geshu-han, 21-2, 53-4, 74, 95  
 Ghaznavids, 427  
 Ghazni, 430, 434, 437–38, 440–45, 451  
 ghettos, 218  
 Ghiyath-al-Din, 451  
 Ghurid dynasty, 335, 416  
 Ghurids, 426–27  
 Giovanni, 491, 688, 692, 698–99  
 giraffe, 233, 280, 293  
 giraffe prefecture (Linzhou), 229, 249, 276–77  
 Glukhov, 490  
 Gobi Desert, 256, 303–4, 306, 316–17, 658–59  
 Godan, 482–83, 572, 577, 581, 583  
 Goldberg, 494  
 Golden Horde, 492, 504–5, 687, 689–90  
 gold teeth barbarians, 646, 677–79  
 Gong Chengshu, 210-1  
 Gong Ming'an, 717  
 Gong Shenyi, 195, 210  
 Gong Yanhui, 604  
 Gong Yanzhang, 148  
 Gongchang, 593  
 Gongchang-fu, 357, 474  
 Gong-gong-shi, 85  
 Gongre (Tibetan minister), 101  
 Gongsun family, 8, 11, 13, 297  
 Gorodets, 486  
 Gou Mengyue, 353, 424, 558  
 Gran, 489, 500–502  
 Grand Canal, 30  
 grand dowager-empress Daji, 695–96  
 Great Hungarian Plains, 498  
 Great Khitan, 226, 231, 253, 273  
 Great Wall, 4, 6–7, 9, 312, 316–17, 322, 399  
 Great Xia, 2, 84  
 Greek Bactria, 435, 438–39  
 Gu Quanwu, 136, 196–97  
 Gu Shi, 711, 720  
 Gu Yanhui, 130, 177–78  
 Gu Yanlang, 176  
 Gu Yanwu, 161, 172  
 Guang1zhou, 285, 573  
 Guang1zhou campaigns, 346, 350, 556–57  
 Guang3zhou, 75, 113, 208, 218  
 Guang'an, 587, 592, 599–600, 614–15  
 Guangde, 198, 629, 704  
 Guangde-jun, 628, 631–32  
 Guangdong, 644, 646–48, 668, 673, 698, 701  
 Guanghua-jun, 345, 545, 556, 572, 575–76  
 Guanghui, 187  
 Guangling, 126, 189, 192  
 Guang-nan, 646  
 Guangping, 11  
 Guangxi, 516–17, 605, 645–46, 678, 683–84  
 Guangyuan, 579, 582, 587–88, 592–93, 596  
 Guangzhou, 118, 122, 200, 571, 573–75  
 Guan-nan, 237, 254  
 Guazhou, 100–101, 239–40, 265, 267–68, 546, 627, 640–41  
 Guazhou and Shazhou, 59, 76, 101, 162, 239–40, 264-5, 267  
 Guilzhou, 128, 585, 625  
 Guil-zhou, 130  
 Guil-zhou and Xia2-zhou campaigns, 620  
 Guilzhou, 299  
 Gui4zhou, 75, 113, 116  
 Guicheng-zhou, 69  
 Gui'de, 333, 461, 463, 468–73, 480–81  
 Gui'de Battle, 468, 470, 481  
 Gui Ruyuan, 564–66  
 Guisheng-jun Army, 232  
 Gui-shui River, 6  
 Guiyou (Guyuk Khan), 482–83, 572  
 Guizhou, 17, 105, 579–80, 595, 597, 639  
 Gui-zhou, 238, 260, 605  
 Gu-jiang River, 596  
 Guo3zhou, 157, 551, 583  
 Guo Aling, 337–38, 345  
 Guo Anyong (Guo Yong'an/Guo Yao'er), 471, 561  
 Guo Baoyu, 323, 415–16, 418, 423, 433–34, 438–39  
 Guo Chang, 84  
 Guo Cheng, 277-8. 551  
 Guo Chong, 167  
 Guo Chongtao, 151–55, 181–82  
 Guo Chongwei, 166  
 Guo Congqian, 155  
 Guo Congyi, 223  
 Guo Cun, 130

Guo Daifeng, 91  
 Guo Dehai, 362, 439, 463–64, 469  
 Guo Dehai and Kuiyuna-badu, 460–61, 463, 467  
 Guo En, 564  
 Guo Fan, 129  
 Guo Hama, 286–87, 356–57, 555, 563  
 Guo Hanjie, 637  
 Guo Hao, 249–50, 280, 530, 535, 540, 543  
 Guo Hong, 634  
 Guo Houben, 111  
 Guo Jia, 11  
 Guo Jin, 213, 223, 230  
 Guo Jing, 250, 326  
 Guo Jingzhu, 123  
 Guo Jinhai, 162  
 Guo Kan, 323, 469, 519–23, 610–6  
 Guo Lüda, 286  
 Guo Ni and Guo Zhuo, 550  
 Guo Pu, 88  
 Guo Qian'guan, 48, 50, 94  
 Guo Rong, 169, 232  
 Guo Shen, 458  
 Guo Sheng, 279, 572  
 Guo Shirong, 466  
 Guo Shoujing, 665, 613, 665, 673  
 Guo Tianxu, 707, 712  
 Guo Tingyun, 222  
 Guo Wanchao, 213  
 Guo Wei, 165–67, 173, 217, 220, 262  
 Guo Wenyi, 34  
 Guo Wenzhen, 342–43, 352, 354–55, 424  
 Guo Wuwei, 212  
 Guo Xiaoke, 44, 91, 107, 170  
 Guo Xin, 58–59, 76, 100  
 Guo Xing and Guo Ying, 711, 713  
 Guo Xingzu, 337  
 Guo Xiong, 554  
 Guo Xun, 32–3  
 Guo Yaoshi, 246–48, 256, 280, 303–4  
 Guo Yingjie, 73  
 Guo Yong, 343  
 Guo Yong'an (Guo3 Yong'an/ An Yong/An Yuan),  
 353, 471–73, 480, 561–62  
 Guo Yu, 178, 183–84, 190, 293  
 Guo Yuanlong, 628  
 Guo Yunming, 165  
 Guo Zhao, 104  
 Guo Zhengsun, 564  
 Guo Zhiyun, 94  
 Guo Zhongxun, 532  
 Guo Zhongyuan, 337–39, 341–42, 355–56, 553, 555  
 Guo Zhuo, 550

Guo Zixing, 703, 707, 710–12  
 Guo Ziyi, 53–54, 56–58, 76, 96–100  
 Guo Zongxun, 169  
 Guo-he River, 168, 194, 594  
 Guo-shui river mouth, 220, 611  
 Guozhou, 96, 538, 543, 546  
*gur-khan*, 385, 387, 389, 425–26  
 Gu-si-luo, 163, 266, 268–69  
 Gu-yi-nie-ke's defeating Wanyan Gang, 328, 414  
 Guyuan, 240, 271–72, 322, 410  
 Guyuk, 478, 482–83, 487–89, 498–500, 502–3, 506–  
 10, 616, 671, 688–89  
 Guzhen, 125

## H

Haan Bi, 345  
 Haan Chang, 537, 541  
 Haan Chongyun, 220  
 Haan Congshi, 178  
 Haan Derang, 227, 231–32, 253  
 Haan Dewei, 273  
 Haan Fuhang (Haan Fuxing), 516  
 Haan Guangguo, 354  
 Haan Hong, 28  
 Haan Hua, 43  
 Haan Jian, 129–32, 134, 175  
 Haan Jian3, 119–20, 125  
 Haan Jiang, 275  
 Haan Junxiong, 120  
 Haan Kuangsi, 231  
 Haan Lin'er, 693, 702, 707, 709, 712–3, 717  
 Haan Lingkun, 168–69, 221–23  
 Haan Long  
 Haan Min  
 Haan Minyi  
 Haan Qi, 235, 237–38, 242, 272  
 Haan Qi and Fan Zhongyan, 240, 271  
 Haan Qing and Li Si'an, 145  
 Haan Quanhui, 64, 134  
 Haan Shantong, 702–3  
 Haan Shi'an, 610  
 Haan Shizhong, 533–36, 538, 541–43  
 Haan Shufeng, 132  
 Haan Tai and Haan Ye, 59  
 Haan Tong, 169, 221–22  
 Haan Tuo Zhou, 318, 547, 549–52  
 Haan Wei, 90  
 Haan Wo, 201  
 Haan Yanwei, 153  
 Haan Yu, 179, 663  
 Haan Yuan, 46



Haan Zhao, 5, 181  
 Haan Zhen, 626, 628, 633, 643  
 Haan Zhi, 542  
 Habich-baghatur, 372  
 Hachi-hulug, 373–74  
 Hachium, 330, 402  
 Ha-da-jin, 313, 315, 385, 387, 390  
 Hadjib, Burak, 433  
 Hai-du, 374, 662, 689  
 Haila'er River and Te-ruo-ke River, 385, 389  
 Hailar River, 311, 315, 385, 387, 389, 398  
 Hailingwang, 317, 408, 544  
 Haizhou, 345, 347, 541, 543–44, 547–48, 555, 570,  
 598–90, 641  
 Haizhou and Donghai, 610  
 Hakata Battle, 674  
 Hala-helin (Karakorum), 507, 608  
 Halanzhenshatuo, 396  
 Halych (Halichi), 449, 484, 491, 499, 504  
 Ha-ma brothers, 699, 706  
 Hami, 42, 44, 100, 107–8, 724  
 Han4zhou, 586, 589, 598  
 Hangzhou, 136, 197–98, 631, 633, 704  
 Hanhailuo, 318, 409  
 Han-jiang River, 589, 618, 624  
 Hanoi, 116, 517, 676, 683  
 Hanpu, 299  
 Han-she, 344, 418  
 Han-shui River, 460–63, 479, 567–68, 591–92, 598,  
 617–24, 667, 705  
 lowerstream, 705  
 upperstream, 542, 589, 607, 618  
 Han-shui River Bend, 589, 704  
 Hantum, 660, 662, 688–89  
 Hanyang, 624, 704, 706, 708  
 Hanyuan of Sichuan, 104, 178, 549  
 Han-zhong, 341, 460–63, 563–65, 567–68, 579–80,  
 587–90, 593–94  
 Hanzhou, 153, 158, 176, 583, 585, 722  
 Hao Chujun, 46  
 Hao Ding, 338, 538  
 Hao Jing, 360, 511, 525, 603, 606–7, 609, 624, 628,  
 657, 661, 667  
 Hao Xiaode, 33, 37  
 Hao Yong, 3, 17, 86, 325, 350, 667  
 Hao Zheng, 542  
 Hao Zhu, 478  
 Hao-heshang-badu, 326, 506–7, 584  
 Haoshuichuan Battle, 237, 272–3  
 Hao-shui River, 711  
 Haozhou, 346, 542, 556–57, 559, 711–12  
 harem, Genghis Khan's, 443  
 Ha-sa-er (Hasar/Jochi-Kasar), 329–30, 387, 414  
 Hashashin (Arsacia), 506, 519  
 He2 Yanwei, 583  
 He2zhou, 358, 545–46, 551–52, 585–86, 712  
 He2-zhou, 96, 268, 275, 278, 284  
 Hebichi, 658  
 Hechi, 567  
 Hechiqu Luke, 373  
 Heda and Pu'a's Jurchen Jin army, 462  
 Hedan, 658  
 Hedong, 54, 56–57, 118–19, 121, 125–  
 130, 143, 149, 159, 220, 245, 277, 280, 354  
 Hefei, 126, 288, 540, 571, 573–76  
 Heh A'xiao, 70  
 Heh Boxiang, 338, 353, 606  
 Heh Chong, 584  
 Heh Chou, 30  
 Heh Delun, 145, 147  
 Heh Feng, 199  
 Heh Feng (Vietnamese Ha Bong), 676  
 Heh Fujin, 155  
 Heh Gui, 131, 185  
 Heh Huaibao, 131  
 Heh Hui, 166, 220  
 Heh Jiami, 70  
 Heh Jin, 362, 562, 564, 566  
 Heh Jintao, 61  
 Heh Jingzhu, 206  
 Heh Jiyun, 223  
 Heh Kui, 181  
 Heh Li4, 250  
 Heh Liang, 235, 264  
 Heh Lingchou, 146  
 Heh Lingtu and Heh Huaipu, 232  
 Heh Lüguang, 74, 98, 111  
 Heh Qiaoyuan, 643  
 Heh Qu (Ha Khuat), 675  
 Heh Quanhao, 120  
 Heh Shi, 332, 343, 358–59  
 Heh Rao, 191  
 Heh Ruobi, 28  
 Heh Shi, 332, 343, 358–9  
 Heh Shun, 576  
 Heh Tao, 539  
 Heh Tianjue, 679  
 Heh Wenhui, 718  
 Heh Wenze, 673  
 Heh Wenzhen, 646  
 Heh Yanxi, 168, 220  
 Heh Yuan, 609  
 Heh Zhiyuan, 514  
 Heh Zizhi, 680

Heh Zongzhe, 721  
 He-hu, 679, 688  
 Hezhou, 210  
 Hei-che-zi, 368  
 Heichi-changzhi, 92  
 Heilongjiang (Amur) River, 15, 17, 251, 292, 297, 301, 311–12, 380  
 Heishui, 18, 51, 51, 179, 298–99, 581  
 Hejian, 169, 223, 227, 232–34, 249–50  
 He-la, 636-7  
 Helian Duo, 114, 119, 126–27, 130  
 Helian surname, 89  
 Helin (Karakorum), 506, 608, 689–90, 721–22  
 Helu, 44, 107-8  
 Helusaogu, 399  
 He-mi-cheng city, 417  
 He-nan, 339, 417  
 He-nan and He-bei garrisons, 208  
 Henghai-jun, 60, 152  
 Hengshan, 2, 6, 82, 605, 608  
 Hengshanzhai, 605  
 Hengzhou, 116, 231, 629, 704  
 Henry II, 493–95  
 Hephthalites, 25–26, 107  
 Heqing, 280  
 He-qu Yellow River Northeast Bend, 54  
 Herat, 431–32, 434–35, 440–41, 444–45, 447  
 Hermannstadt, 498–501  
 Heshangyuan, 535–37, 540, 550-51  
 Heshilie-de, 330–31  
 Heshilie-hengduan, 338  
 Heshilie-qiujuin, 322, 411, 413  
 He-Shuo garrisons, 58, 60, 75-6, 133  
 Hesimaili, 420, 426, 432, 436, 448, 450  
 Hezhong, 97, 119, 121–22, 124, 355-6, 425, 430, 453, 461, 695  
 Hezhou, 524–25, 587, 591–94, 594, 596, 598, 600–602  
*Histoire des Mongoles* by M. le Baron C. D’Ohsson (A.D. 1780-1855), 309, 374, 379, 434  
 Hlukhiv, 490  
 Hoa, Thanh, 681–82  
 Ho’elun, 384, 387, 397  
 Holy Roman Emperor Charles IV, 497  
 Hong Bian and An Jingda, 101  
 Hong Chaqiu, 673–74  
 Hong Dachun, 348, 670  
 Hong Daxuan, 348, 418, 422  
 Hong Fu, 635  
 Hong Fuyuan, 459, 670–71  
 Hong Hao, 251, 305, 379, 540–41, 559  
 Hong Jun, 371-2, 375, 437, 496, 547  
 Hong Mai, 559  
 Hong Tianxi, 605  
 Hong Zikui, 552  
 Hong-ao-Jun (Red Jacket Army), 347, 354, 414, 555–56, 559  
 Hong-baobao, 723  
 Hong-ji-la (Onggirat), 313–14, 342, 385, 387  
 Hou Barong, 212  
 Hou Du, 598  
 Hou Jian, 472  
 Hou Jin, 472  
 Hou Jing, 350, 547, 557  
 Hou Junji, 40, 90  
 Hou Lun, 204  
 Hou Renbao and Sun Quanxing, 225  
 Hou San, 465  
 Hong Tianxi, 605  
 Hou Xiaoshu, 355  
 Hou Xing, 637  
 Hou Zan, 120, 133  
 Hou Zhang, 10  
 Hou Zhi, 337, 346, 480  
 Hou-shu, 175, 181–82, 225  
 Hotula Khan, 374, 384  
 household numbers, 651–52  
 households, 10–13, 175, 199–201, 302, 405, 476, 481, 511–12, 650–53  
 Hphags-pa, 514–15  
 Hu barbarian, 5, 7, 75, 81  
 Hu Dahai, 707, 710, 712–13  
 Hu Guangqi, 373  
 Hu Gui, 143,  
 Hu Hai, 711, 722  
 Hu Huaixiao, 641  
 Hu Jingzhang, 142  
 Hu Jinsi, 199  
 Hu Luqian, 564  
 Hu Mei, 713  
 Hu Qiao, 17, 368  
 Hu Qiong, 149  
 Hu Quan, 534, 540, 547, 632  
 Hu Shen, 715  
 Hu Shahu (Jurchen), 319, 322, 328-9, 409, 411, 413-4  
 Hu Shijiang (Hu Zhongxian), 540, 543  
 Hu Shixiong, 615  
 Hu Shunshe, 247, 256, 532  
 Hu Sizheng, 31, 32  
 Hu Tianzuo, 352, 354, 424  
 Hu Tingrui, 718  
 Hu Yanke, 165  
 Hu Yinglin, 252  
 Hu Yingyan, 629, 632

Hu Yu (Hu Zishan), 652  
 Hu Yue, 197  
 Hu Zaixing, 556, 606  
 Hu Ze, 195  
 Hu Zishan, 652  
 Hu-sha-hu (Husha Hu/ Hu Shahu), 320–22, 328–29, 410–11, 413  
 Hu-zhan (Khujand), 429  
 Hu1-Sha1-hu1, 310–11, 379  
 Hu-cha, 510  
 Hu-cha-hu, 321  
 Hu-du, 394, 398, 404, 420–21, 679  
 Hu-dun, 673–74  
 Hu-dun and He-la's Mongol, 637  
 Hu-dun, 637  
 Hu-huangzhou, 604  
 Hua2zhou, 117, 137, 144-5, 150–51  
 Hua Gao, 705, 712  
 Hua Hong, 177–78  
 Hua Qian, 198  
 Hua Yun, 711  
 Huaide-jun, 280  
 Huai-dong, 547, 550, 557, 560, 571, 598, 610  
 Huai-du, 632  
 Huai-he River, 58, 75, 168, 111, 220–21, 318, 342, 409, 511, 538, 553, 572, 607  
 Huai-jun army, 643-5  
 Huailai, 322, 325, 327–28, 333, 413–14  
 Huai-nan, 127, 133, 135–36, 168, 185–86, 189–91, 194  
 Huai-nan army, 133, 135-6, 189  
 Huainan campaign, 183, 185  
 Huai-nan regime, 136, 154, 185–86, 198  
 Huai-nan satrap office, 136, 189, 196  
 Huai-nan territories of Southern Tang, 168, 174, 194  
 Huaining-fu, 541–42  
 Huai-shui River, 115, 117, 294, 334, 348, 350, 354, 530–32, 542–44, 546–51, 554, 557-9, 577, 703  
 Huaishui River and Ao-he River, 564  
 Huai-xi Campaign, 356, 560  
 Huai-xi territories, 546, 550, 574–75, 586, 588  
 Huaiyang-jun, 52  
 Huaiyuan, 236, 240, 598, 603, 616–17  
 Huaizhou, 56, 78, 128, 330  
 Huamao-jun (flowery hat army), 337  
 Huan Yanfan, 46–47  
 Huan'erzui, 321–22, 409–11, 413  
 Huang Chao, 63, 112–13, 115–23, 121, 123, 128, 130–31, 170, 175, 200, 261  
     betrayed by Zhu Wen, 22, 106, 170, 217  
 Huang Chao and Zhu Wen, 58, 75  
 Huang Chao's emperor title, 64  
 Huang Chou, 723  
 Huang Bida, 645  
 Huang Bing, 594, 677  
 Huang Cheng, 537  
 Huang Guangde, 645  
 Huang Jun, 644, 668  
 Huang Kui, 121  
 Huang Liang, 639  
 Huang Quji, 643  
 Huang Renfeng, 206  
 Huang Shaopo, 205  
 Huang Shun, 624  
 Huang Shunqing, 574-5  
 Huang Wanyou, 630, 640  
 Huang Wenjing, 145  
 Huang Yansun, 554  
 Huang Yuling and Ruan Zhang, 681  
 Huang Zhongwen, 613  
 Huang2zhou, 245, 267, 278–79  
 Huangchuan, 573–75  
 Huangfu Bin, 317, 408, 550-1  
 Huangfu Hui, 154–55, 168, 193, 221  
 Huangfu Jie, 680  
 Huangfu Lin, 151  
 Huangfu Ting, 573  
 Huangfu Weiming, 94-5  
 Huangfu Wenliang, 92  
 Huangfu Wuyi, 34  
 Huanglinggang, 468  
 Huanglong-fu, 164, 255, 301  
 Huangniu-bu, 345–46, 545, 554, 556  
 Huangpi, 525, 603, 706  
 Huangping, 595, 601, 605, 686, 692  
 Huang Renfeng, 206  
 Huang-shui River, 74, 268, 288, 303  
 Huangtou Jurchens, 298, 369  
 Huangtou Shiwei, 17, 368–69  
 Huangtou Xianbei, 369  
 Huang Wanyou, 630, 640  
 Huangyan, 703, 718  
 Huangyou Era, 241, 274  
 Huangzhou, 353–54, 573–76, 606, 618, 625, 645, 706  
 Huangzhou and E'zhou, 136, 184, 190  
 Huangzhou water margin, 604  
 Huanqing-lu, 240, 272  
 Huanzhou, 284, 318–19, 322, 409–10, 512  
 huashi-gang (flowery stones), 246, 248  
 Huazhou, 41–43, 121, 240, 269, 329, 332, 543, 546  
 Hubei, 184–86, 537–38, 573–76, 584–85, 621–22, 625  
 Hubilie, 509  
 Huduhu, 572, 680

- Hudun and Yesu-dai'er's Mongol, 637  
 Huhhot, 28, 70, 325, 412  
 Hui4he-bu battles, 319–21, 410, 412  
 Hui4hechuan, 319, 321, 323–4, 410–11  
 Hui4shui River, 355  
 Hui4zhou, 285, 340, 555  
 Huigu/Huihe/Huihu (Uygurs), 41–44, 54, 56–59,  
 74–76, 89, 94, 97–104, 108–10, 264–68, 345,  
 356, 399–401, 403–4, 406, 408, 577  
 nine-surname Huihe, 375  
 khan, 97, 266  
 Huihe and Nanzhao, 59  
 Huihe and Shiwei, 17, 299  
 Huihe chieftain Yeluoge, 267, 404  
 Huihe Khan Wuyi-chenggong, 103  
 Huihe Khan Zhuangxin, 110  
 Huihe mercenary troops, 57  
 Huihe territory of Guazhou, 239  
 Huihui, 395, 404, 612–13, 664  
 Hui-jun prefecture, 582  
 Huining-fu, 312, 331, 413  
 Huixian of Longnan, 565–67, 577–79, 592–93, 598  
 Huizhou, 260, 284, 286, 354, 356, 643–46, 704, 708  
 Hukou, 195, 705  
 Hu-la Khan, 73  
 Hu-la-chu, 624, 627, 631–33, 642  
 Hulaoguan, 33–34  
 Hulegu, 499–500, 510–12, 519–23, 660, 687  
 Huletuhan-mie'er'gan, 421  
 Huligai-Lu circuit's city Huligai, 344  
 Hu-li-gang, 351  
 Hunan, 111, 115, 185–88, 243, 369, 605–6, 628–29,  
 667–68, 704–5  
 Hundred Yue people, 513  
 Hunduhai, 598, 658  
 Hungarian army, 500  
 Hungarian campaign, 488  
 Hungarian king, 491, 499–502  
 Hungarian Plains, 501  
 Hungarians, 270–71, 490–91, 495, 500–502, 504  
 Hungary, 487, 491–96, 498–501, 504, 687–89  
 Hun-haidu, 657–58  
 Huns, 1–7, 9–10, 14–16, 66–67, 83–84, 365–68  
 Huns and Gaoche people, 383  
 Huns and Gao-che people, 366  
 Huns and Hu barbarians, 5  
 Huns and Hunnic kings Loufan-wang and Baiyang-  
 wang, 7  
 Huns and successor Turks, 7  
 Huo An, 11  
 Huo Cun, 123, 146  
 Huo Guang, 238  
 Huo Luhuai, 608, 657  
 Huo Qubing, 24  
 Huo Yanwei, 146–47, 149, 151–53, 155  
 Huo Yi, 338  
 Huoba, 50  
 Huocha'er, 390, 396  
 Huo-cha-er, 395  
 Huoduole, 459, 469, 503  
 Huotuoshi Khan (Huotuosi-han), 447–49, 484,  
 487, 499  
 Huozhou, 344, 421, 689  
 Hutou-guan, 603  
 Huxiaocheng, 614–15  
 Huyan Bao, 473–74  
 Huyan De and Zhang Xi3, 618  
 Huzhou, 168, 196, 632, 704  
*Hypatian Chronicle*, 489
- ## I
- Ibn Al-Athir, 444, 450  
*idiqu*, 524, 689  
 Ighraq, 437, 444  
 Ikires, 342, 385, 387–89, 398  
 Ili River, 47, 108  
 Ilkhanate, 363, 373, 523, 659–60, 687–90  
 Ilqa Senggun, 282, 395–96, 404, 406  
 Immortality, 62, 203  
 Immortals, 376, 391, 444, 446  
 immortal sought by Genghis Khan at  
 Badakhshan, 446  
 Inalchuq, 427, 429  
 India, 38, 80, 90, 432, 443–46, 521–22, 690  
 India Campaign, 444, 521  
 India being attacked, 511–12, 519, 521, 590  
 Indo-European people, 84  
 Indo-European Yuezhi people, 83  
 Indus Battle, 445  
 Indus River, 356, 440, 442–46, 448  
 Inflation  
 Mongol Yuan Zhizhi Reform, 696  
 Toktoghan's reform, 698  
 Wang Anshi's Xining Reform, 233, 242–4, 248  
 Zhong-tong 'yuan-bao' currency (A.D.  
 1260), 661  
 Zhiyuan 'tongxing bao-chao' currency (A.D.  
 1287), 693  
 Zhi-zheng *jiao-chao* currency (A.D. 1350), 701  
 Inner Mongolia, 41–43, 317–19, 321–22, 332, 383,  
 408–9, 412–13  
 intermarriage, 7, 10, 89–90, 119, 209  
 Iran, 431–32, 437, 450–51, 506, 510

Iraq-i Ajam, 432–33, 438, 441, 446–48, 450  
Irbis-shekui, 44, 107–8  
Irghiz, 306, 403–4, 418, 420  
iron chains, 150, 180, 429  
Iron Gate Battle, 365, 433, 435, 438–39  
iron gun, 347, 555–56  
iron pillar, 71, 93  
ironsmith, 703  
iron thorns, 324, 328, 414  
Irtys River, 306, 404, 407  
Isbara, 26–27  
Isfahan, 431, 441, 446–47, 451  
Islamic calendar, 434–36, 438  
island, 484, 497–99, 646–47, 668–72, 674–75, 685  
island capital city, 671  
island city, 503  
island countries, 685  
island Yi barbarians, 294  
ispah, 715–17  
Izhora, 487

## J

Jadirats, 372, 387–88, 390, 393–94  
Jala ad-Din (Jalal al-Din Mangburnu), 356, 427–33,  
436–38, 440–46, 450–51  
Jala ad-Din and Mieli-khan's army, 443  
Jalair (Jalayir), 311, 342–43, 373–74, 398, 401,  
419, 461  
Jamuka, 385–90, 393–94, 396–98  
Jankent, 345, 433, 435–36  
Japan, 197, 369, 644, 669, 671–75, 685–86  
Japan Sea, 13, 246, 248, 293–94, 300  
Jaurait Tayichi'ut, 389  
Java, 641, 644, 680, 685–6  
Jebe (Jebei/Jebi), 317–18, 324–25, 327, 344–45, 353,  
401–2, 408–9, 412, 414, 448–49  
Jebi and Subetei, 448–49  
Jeju, 671  
Jelme, 390, 401–2, 424  
Jend, 428, 433, 435  
Ji Ruzuo, 473–74  
Ji2xian, 348, 359, 462  
Ji2zhou, 191, 201, 343, 348  
Ji3zhou, 329, 351  
Ji4zhou, 77, 132, 157, 329–30, 709  
Jia Ben, 52  
Jia Fu, 511  
Jia Guan, 98, 110–111  
Jia Hezhong, 543  
Jia Juzhen, 624  
Jia Lu, 699, 702, 711  
Jia Quan, 74  
Jia She4, 350, 353–54, 356, 557–61  
Jia Sidao, 526, 587–88, 594, 604–7, 613–17, 626–30,  
666–68  
Jia Tong, 338  
Jia Wenbei, 623  
Jia Xuanweng, 634–5  
Jia Yu, 338  
Jia Yuqing, 633–35  
Jia Zikun, 565  
Jialzhou, 117, 283, 286, 353, 515  
Jia-ding, 584–6, 589–90, 614–16, 636–37  
Jiading, 668  
Jia-gu, 342, 419  
Jiagu Changge, 320, 412  
Jiagu Haishou, 286  
Jiagu Heng, 314–5  
Jiagu Qingchen, 313  
Jiagu Rui, 285–6  
Jiagu Xianzu, 507  
Jiagu Zhiqi, 665  
Jia-he River, 147  
Jia Hezhong, 548  
Jialing-jiang River, 565–66, 578–9, 581–82, 587,  
592–93, 598–601  
Jian3zhou, 583–84, 596–98, 616  
Jian4zhou, 154, 157–58, 181  
Jianchang, 515, 517, 640, 642, 708  
Jiandu, 636, 677–78  
Jiandu-maan barbarians in Burma, 677  
Jiang Baoyi, 36  
Jiang Cai, 627–28, 630, 634–35, 640–41  
Jiang Botong, 284  
Jiang De, 621  
Jiang Hai, 569, 576  
Jiang Kai, 238  
Jiang Shaoyu, 231  
Jiang Wanli, 628, 630  
Jiang Wanzai, 569  
Jiang Wei, 154  
Jiang Wenwei, 193  
Jiang Xuanhui, 65, 134, 137  
Jiang Yanhui, 203  
Jiang'an-zhou, 637, 639  
Jiangdu, 29–30, 33–34  
Jiang-du, 458, 670  
Jian'ge, 154, 157–58, 584, 587, 592  
Jianghua-dao Island, 458–59, 482, 670  
Jiangle, 714–15  
Jiangling, 113, 116, 183–88, 190, 461, 574–75,  
623–26  
Jiangnan-guo, 133, 192, 200, 210

Jiang-rong barbarians, 2-4, 85  
 Jiangsu, 55, 219, 538, 551, 661  
 Jiangxi, 115, 135-37, 187, 198, 200-202, 628-30, 668, 692, 703-4, 708  
 Jiangyin, 704  
 Jiangzhou, 113, 129, 625, 628, 708, 713  
 Jiankang, 534, 548, 626-28, 632  
 Jiankun, 399  
 Jianlong, 456  
 Jianmen, 154, 157-8, 182, 579, 582, 589, 596-97, 599  
 Jianning, 704, 714  
 Jianu nickname  
     Yelü Zhangnu (Yelü Temoyan; Yelü Zhangjianu), 255  
     Yelü Zhangnu (Yelü Temoyan; Yelü Zhangjianu), 301  
     Duji Sizhong (Duji Qianjianu), 318-9, 409  
     Wanyan Guojianu, 284  
     Yila-Zhongjianu, 348, 424, 352  
     Wanyan Zhengjianu, 544  
     Baijianu, 616  
     Gao-jianu (a Khitan), 723  
 Jianwei, 588, 637  
 Jianyan Era, 247, 309, 376, 381, 529  
 Jianyang, 206, 533, 550, 584  
*Jianyan yilai xi-nian yao-lu*, 247, 309-10, 374, 381  
 Jianzhou, 115, 199-201, 203-7  
 Jiao Deyu, 614-15  
 Jiao Gongxian (Kieu Cong Tien), 209  
 Jiao Jin, 577  
 Jiao Jixun, 162  
 Jiao Yuan, 592  
 Jiaogang, 125  
 Jiaoshan, 619, 627, 631  
 Jiao-xi, 544-45  
 Jiaozhi, 63, 116, 209, 675-84  
 Jiaozhi Emperor Chen Rijiong, 676  
 Jiaozhou, 116, 358, 586  
 Jia-shan mountain, 246-47, 256, 302  
 Jie4zhou, 580, 589  
 Jie-hu barbarians, 14, 106, 161, 350, 557  
 Jiezhou, 361-62, 535-37, 562, 566-67, 578, 722  
 Jiguan-ai, 578-79, 581-82  
 Jih2zhou, 640, 642  
 Ji-hu barbarians, 22  
 Jihzhou, 198, 202  
 Jilin, 326, 333, 344, 412  
 Ji-mo, 294-95  
 Jin Emperor Aizong, 358, 467, 475  
 Jin Emperor Feidi, 475  
 Jin Emperor Shizong, 475, 559  
 Jin Emperor Taizong, 475, 538  
 Jin Emperor Taizu, 309, 475  
 Jin Emperor Weishaowang, 317, 475  
 Jin Emperor Xizong, 308-9, 312, 377-78, 382  
 Jin Emperor Xizong and Wanyan Zongbi, 378  
 Jin Emperor Xuanzong, 333, 475  
 Jin Emperor Zhangzong, 312, 316, 475  
 Jin Baoding and Song Yanqi, 670  
 Jin Fangqing, 673-4  
 Jin Jiuli, 348, 422  
 Jin Pu, 330  
 Jin Renjun, 459, 671  
 Jin Tongjing, 616  
 Jin Yunhou, 458, 670  
 Jin1zhou, 479, 536, 540, 567, 580, 583  
 Jin2zhou, 255, 301  
 Jin3zhou, 314, 317, 332-33, 415-16  
 Jin-aizong, 357, 471, 560  
 Ji'nan, 33, 351, 361, 455, 460-61, 561, 610-11, 661-62, 709-10  
 Jincheng, 35, 93, 106, 223  
 Jinchi, 614, 646, 677-79  
*Jin Shi*, 299-301, 312, 319-21, 323-25, 329-31, 378-80  
*Jin Shi Lu*, 470, 476  
 Jin-wuzhu, 374, 530, 533-34, 541  
 Jing Anmin, 338, 352, 424  
 Jinn De, 586  
 Jinn Hui, and Li Shitai, 175  
 Jing Hui, 46-47  
 Jinn Guobao, 524, 600  
 Jing Jin, 152  
 Jing Xiang, 150  
 Jing Yan'guang, 162-63, 172  
 Jing Sili, 275  
 Jing Siyi, 276  
 Jing Tai, 240, 272, 274  
 Jing Yan'guang, 159, 162-3, 172  
 Jing1zhou, 153, 284, 320, 530  
 Jing3zhou, 132, 141, 329, 332  
 Jing4jiang-fu, 549  
 Jing4zhou, 317-19, 408, 595-96, 625-26  
 Jing'ao, 644, 646  
 Jingjiang-fu, 513-14, 605-6, 646  
 Jingjiangkou, 625  
 Jingjiang-kou river mouth, 714  
*jing-jiao* (Nestorianism), 692, 701  
 Jingmen, 115-16, 573, 576, 624-25, 705  
 Jing-nan, 113, 116, 128, 178, 183-86, 194-95  
 Jingnan satrap Wang Xingyu, 131, 178  
 Jingru and Hua Hong, 178  
 Jingshui River, 86  
 Jing-shui River, 280, 467, 529-30

Jing-Xiang and Huai-he River, 572  
 Jing-Xiang Campaign, 576, 583  
 Jingyang, 97–98  
 Jingyuan-lu, 240, 271  
 Jingzhou, 39–40, 96–97, 99, 103  
 Jinhua, 117, 190, 634, 642  
 Jinkeng, 341  
 Jinling, 188, 192–95, 707, 710, 712  
 Jinmaan-zhou prefecture, 108  
 Jinn Emperor Chudi, 163, 172  
 Jinn Emperor Gaozu, 161  
 Jinn Emperor Wudi, 218  
 Jinn General Wei Ke, 52  
 Jinniu-dao mountain road, 589  
 Jinn-wang, King, 119, 132, 141–45, 149, 167, 171, 179, 229, 253, 261  
 Jinnyang, 29, 36, 134, 223  
 Jinnzhou, 36, 127, 129, 166  
 Jinshajiang River, 117, 515–6, 590–3  
 Jinsha-jiang/Yangtze, 593–94  
 Jishizhou, 268, 281, 284, 455–56  
 Jiuding, 637  
*Jiu-jun*, 313–14, 326, 328, 333, 412, 419  
 Jiuqu, 35, 93–94  
 Jiuquan, 10  
*Jiu Tang Shu*, 63, 87, 104–6, 112, 391  
*Jiu-wen Zhengwu*, 310–11  
 Ji Guangshen, 56  
 Ji Jian, 191  
 Ji Qi, 336  
 Ji Ruzuo, 473–4  
 Ji Yuanshi (Qi Yuanshi), 62  
 Ji Tong, 9  
 Ji Wenlong, 645  
 Ji Xian, 350, 554, 557  
 Ji Xiang, 190  
 Ji Yanwo, 234  
 Ji Yun, 247, 309, 320, 334, 381  
 Ji Zhizhao, 61  
 Jizhua-tan, 600  
 Ji-zi, 293–94  
 Ji-zi Chaoxian, 295  
 Jochi (Jochi-Kasar), 319–20, 402, 412, 414–15, 433, 435–36, 449–50, 481, 483, 500, 572  
 Ju Boya, 30  
 Ju Wentai, 42, 107, 218  
 Ju Wenzhen, 59, 103  
 Ju-lun Lake, 17, 67, 314, 367  
 Juma-he River, 169, 227, 235, 254  
 Jumie city, 513  
 Junlzhou, 461, 463–64, 479, 545  
 Junlzhou city, 464  
 Junlzhou Prefecture, 464  
 Jun-wang, King, 147  
 Junzhou, 471, 473, 617, 621, 703–4  
 Jurchen academician Wang E4, 467  
 Jurchen capital city Bian-jing, 453, 458, 460, 466, 480  
 Jurchen capital city of Zhongdu, 284, 335, 416  
 Jurchen campaigns  
     Jurchen northern campaigns, 316  
     Jurchen northwestern and southwestern circuits, 312  
 Jurchen chieftain Wanyan Aguda, 246, 255  
 Jurchens deputy marshal Jiagu-changde, 355  
 Jurchen deputy marshal Lu Guchui, 459  
 Jurchen deputy marshal Moran Jingzhong, 327  
 Jurchen Dong-jing, 330  
 Jurchen Dong-Xia, 669  
 Jurchen dowager-empress Tai-hou-Wang-shi, 470, 481  
 Jurchen Duke Pingyang-gong, 354, 356, 425  
 Jurchen dukes, 354  
 Jurchen eastern capital Dong-jing, 325, 327, 414  
 Jurchen emissary Wanyan Nushen, 459  
 Jurchen Emperor Aizong, 467, 470, 474, 561, 567  
 Jurchen Emperor Ha-la, 379  
 Jurchen Emperor Jin-aizong, 473  
 Jurchen Emperor Jin-shizong, 282, 405  
 Jurchen Emperor Shizong, 281–82  
 Jurchen Emperor Shouxu, 466, 480  
 Jurchen Emperors Jin-shi-zong and Hailingwang, 606  
 Jurchen Emperors Jin-taizong, 476  
 Jurchen emperor's son-in-law Pusan Anzhen, 338  
 Jurchen Emperor Taizong, 279, 305, 378, 384  
 Jurchen Emperor Taizu, 251, 303  
 Jurchen emperor to Gui'de, 472, 480  
 Jurchen Emperor Wanyan Liang, 281, 530, 539  
 Jurchen Emperor Wanyan Yongji, 409  
 Jurchen Emperor Weishaowang, 317, 408  
 Jurchen Emperor Xizong, 308, 310, 378–80, 384  
 Jurchen Emperor Xuanzong, 341, 346, 554, 560  
 Jurchen Emperor Zhangzong, 282, 317, 403, 407–8, 552  
 Jurchen Feihu3-jun army, 455, 473, 480  
 Jurchen Flowery Hat Army (Huamao-jun), 285, 323, 340, 353–54, 356, 412, 419, 554, 559  
 Jurchen founder Hanpu, 394  
 Jurchen founder-king Zhongxian-wang, 324  
 Jurchen founding marshal Wanyan Xiyin, 251  
 Jurchen General Bao Changshou, 554  
 Jurchen General Batulu'an, 346, 556  
 Jurchen General Fuhe-na, 330

Jurchen General Heshilieyata, 459  
 Jurchen General He-shi-lie-zhen, 359  
 Jurchen General Heshilie-zhongta, 551  
 Jurchen General Hou Zhi, 472  
 Jurchen General Hu1-Shalhu1, 374  
 Jurchen General Husha-hu, 320  
 Jurchen General Hu-sha-hu, 410, 550–51  
 Jurchen General Hu Shahu, 328, 409, 414  
 Jurchen General Hu-Shahu, 328  
 Jurchen General Li Gongzhi, 285  
 Jurchen General Li Ping, 465  
 Jurchen General Meng-gu-gang, 347  
 Jurchen General Nahe-maizhu, 564  
 Jurchen General Pucha Guannu, 461, 469  
 Jurchen General Pusan-kui, 552  
 Jurchen General Qiang Shen, 465  
 Jurchen General Qingshannu, 562  
 Jurchen General Qishilie-hushahu, 410  
 Jurchen General Sa-li-he, 281  
 Jurchen General Baisa, 345  
 Jurchen General Guo Shen, 458  
 Jurchen General Jiagu Rui, 286  
 Jurchen General Wo-lu, 305  
 Jurchen General Zhao-li, 305  
 Jurchen General Tongji-mojida, 321  
 Jurchen General Tudan Wudian, 465  
 Jurchen General Tuoman-hushimen, 339  
 Jurchen General Wanyan Chengli, 285–86  
 Jurchen General Wanyan Chenheshang, 552, 565  
 Jurchen General Wanyan Gang, 550  
 Jurchen General Wanyan Jiujin, 322  
 Jurchen General Wanyan Loushi, 279, 530  
 Jurchen General Wanyan Lüming, 325  
 Jurchen General Wanyan Salihe, 539  
 Jurchen General Wanyan Tianji, 324  
 Jurchen General Wanyan Yi, 459, 503  
 Jurchen General Wanyan Zongbi, 309, 311, 380  
 Jurchen General Wanyan Zongbi, 308  
 Jurchen General Wanyan Zonghan, 247–48, 256, 304  
 Jurchen General Wanyan Zongwang, 279  
 Jurchen General Wulinda Hutu, 470  
 Jurchen General Wu-lin-da-tai, 534  
 Jurchen General Wu Xian, 344, 421, 462, 479  
 Jurchen General Wu-zu, 378  
 Jurchen General Xu-ding, 338  
 Jurchen General Yang Woyan, 284, 340, 356, 556  
 Jurchen General Yelü Tan, 302  
 Jurchen General Zhanhan, 249, 303, 306  
 Jurchen General Zhuhu Gaoqi, 552  
 Jurchen General Zongwang, 279  
 Jurchen generals Hu-zhan and Xi-bu-zhu, 543  
 Jurchen generals Loushi and Zhanhan, 305  
 Jurchen generals Wanyan Chengyu and Wanyan Lin, 551  
 Jurchen generals Wanyan Loushi and Wanyan Salihe, 535  
 Jurchen generals Wulu and Zhehe, 536  
 Jurchen generals Yin-da-hu and Wu-gu-lun, 416  
 Jurchen Great Walls, 307, 318, 327  
 Jurchen Jin Dynasty's Demise, 473  
 Jurchen Jin Emperor Aizong, 357, 362, 466–67, 474  
 Jurchen Jin Emperor Shizong, 545–46  
 Jurchen Jin Emperor Taizong Wanyan Cheng, 248, 302, 306, 331  
 Jurchen Jin Emperor Taizu, 247, 256, 304  
 Jurchen Jin Emperor Wanyan Liang, 308, 380, 538  
 Jurchen Jin Emperor Wanyan Yongji, 283, 317–18, 408–9  
 Jurchen Jin Emperor Xizong, 308  
 Jurchen Jin Emperor Xuanzong, 331, 337, 339–40, 342, 553–54  
 Jurchen Jin Emperor Zhangzong, 313, 317, 549  
 Jurchen Jin General Bei-sa, 548  
 Jurchen Jin General Buha, 462, 567  
 Jurchen Jin General Heshiliezhen, 355  
 Jurchen Jin General Jin-Wuzu, 378  
 Jurchen Jin General Wanyan Heda, 459, 478, 563  
 Jurchen Jin Emperor Aizong, 359  
 Jurchen Jin Emperor Xuanzong, 340, 419  
 Jurchen Jin General Wu Xian, 579  
 Jurchen Jin's triangle & quartet wars, 337  
 Jurchen-Khitan war, 558  
 Jurchen King Huainan-jun-wang, 561  
 Jurchen King Liang-wang, 469  
 Jurchen King Linzi-jun-wang, 459  
 Jurchen King Xiao-wang, 362  
 Jurchen King Zhonglie-wang, 310, 379  
 Jurchen Liao-dong and Liao-xi territories, 332  
 Jurchen Linhuang-lu, 313  
 Jurchen marshal Tudan Yidu, 472  
 Jurchen marshal Wanyan Saibu, 345  
 Jurchen marshal Wanyan Zhi, 332  
 Jurchen marshal Yuan Zhi, 474  
 Jurchen-Mengwu wars, 559  
 Jurchen mercenary army Zhongxiao-jun, 464  
 Jurchen Mingchang Great Wall, 317, 407  
 Jurchen minister Gao Ruli, 339, 553  
 Jurchen minister Tudan Kening, 313  
 Jurchen minister Wang E4, 371  
 Jurchen minister Zhang Tian'gang, 475  
 Jurchen-Mongol war, 554  
 Jurchen proposal to swap land for peace, 281



Jurchen Qinzhou and Gongzhou territories, 346, 554, 558, 578

Jurchen rebel Puxian Wannu, 344

Jurchen Shang-jing, 313

Jurchen She-diao-jun (eagle shooting) army, 546

Jurchen siege of Yingchang-fu, 542

Jurchen-Soong alliance, 247, 256

Jurchen-Soong truce, 350, 557

Jurchen-Soong wars, 153, 281

Jurchen subordinates in Shangjing-Tai4zhou, 380

Jurchen Tai4zhou-lu, 380

Jurchen Tanggu-yila-Jiu, 325

Jurchen-Tangut alliance, 283, 318, 409

Jurchen-Tangut wars, 286

Jurchen Taoyuan-jun, 360, 561

Jurchen *te-mu*, 684

Jurchen usurper-emperor Wanyan Liang, 559

Jurchen Wanyan-shi, 470

Jurchen Xi-jing city, 322

Jurchen Yisheng-jun, 472

Jurchen Zhan3-jun, 329, 342

Jurchens, 246–52, 279–88, 296–328, 330–57, 405–25, 529–65

- barbarian origin, 313
- big-clan, 298
- dislodged, 323, 411
- early, 316, 384, 391
- ethnic, 665
- raw, 724
- remnant, 458, 464, 477
- uncivilized, 298

Jurchens' ancestors, 17, 291, 368

Jurchens' launching a third battlefront, 345

Jurchens' propitious land, 311, 327

Jurchens' siege of Xianren-guan, 281, 537

Jurchens' two-front wars, 340

Jurchens and Khitans, 381

Jurchens and Mongols, 8, 22, 66, 217

Jurchens and Soong Chinese, 153, 246, 256, 302–3

Jurchens and Southern Soong, 308, 378, 380, 411, 662

Jurchens and Tanguts, 284, 287

Jurchens and Tatars, 314

Jurchens and Yelü Dashi's Kara-Khitay, 316

Jurkins, 377, 385–86, 389, 392, 395, 397, 401, 403

Juyongguan Pass, 270, 322, 324–25, 328, 412, 414

Juzhou, 346–47, 351, 555, 620

Juzjani, Minhaj al-Siraj Muhammad, 334–35, 416, 445

## K

Kabul, 437, 441–44, 446, 451

Kabul-khan's Mengwu people, 308

Kabul mountain pass in Baluwan, 442

Kadan, 483, 487–88, 492, 497–504, 510

Kadan and Batu's army, 504

Kaidu, 373–74, 398, 491, 494, 687–90

Kaidu and attacked Khubilai's grandson, 690

Kaidu in attacking Mengke-temur, 687

Kaidu-khan, 374

Kaidu-khan's son Chaozhenwo'ertiegai, 396–97, 451

Kaifeng, 164–65, 249–52, 465–70, 479–81, 531–32, 539–42

Kaifeng siege, 467, 480, 529

Kai-la-tuo city, 452

Kaiping, 512, 606, 608–9, 612, 657–59

Kaiping-fu, 524, 607–8, 657, 662

Kaixi Northern Expedition, 317, 408, 547, 549, 551

Kaiyang-men gate, 473, 480

Kaiyuan, 298, 301–3, 323, 723

Kaiyuan Era, 16, 18, 50, 299

Kaizhou, 583–84, 615–16, 620, 636–37

Kaizhou rebellion, 302

Kalgan, 303, 319, 321–24, 327

Kalunte'er castle, 434–35

Kamchatka Peninsula, 51, 724

Kamenets, 490–91

Kang Baoyi (Kang Zhaoyi), 233

Kang Chengxun, 63, 111–12

Kang Chuangui, 119

Kang Huaizhen, 137, 141, 143, 261

Kang Jining, 62

Kang Junli, 113–14, 127

Kang Lüe, 532

Kang Maocai, 713

Kang Moji (Kang Zhao), 77

Kang Pian, 189

Kang Shangbi, 131, 178

Kang Sumi, 41

Kang Tai, 714

Kang Wentong, 157

Kang Yan, 142, 179

Kang Yanxiao, 151, 154–55, 181

Kang Ye, 359, 561

Kang Yu, 626

Kang Yunzhi, 532

Kang-li (Kankali, Qangli), 306, 421, 425, 427, 429

Kan-ni-jin city, 452

Kara-khanid khanates, 306, 425, 428

Kara-Khanids, 426–27

Karakhitai, 7, 283, 344, 407

- Kara-khitai (Karakhitai), 7, 306–7, 311, 316, 344, 393–95, 404–7, 415–6, 418, 423, 425–28, 438
- Kara-khitai bodyguard, 420, 426, 432, 436
- Kara-khitai campaign, 416
- Kara-khitai founder Yelü Dashi, 307, 398
- Kara-khitai usurper Kuchlug, 428
- Kara-Khitay, 256–57, 335, 393, 403, 407–8, 415, 420, 423, 425–26, 669
- Kara-Khoja, 28, 30, 404, 406, 689
- Karakorum, 506–7, 523–24, 657, 659, 689–90, 721
- Karatai River, 418, 427
- Karluk rebellion, 307
- Karluks, 48, 95–96, 307, 399–400, 403, 405, 427–28
- Kashan (Guishang), 431, 441, 447
- Kashgar, 306, 415, 420, 425–26, 428
- Kashi, 47, 93
- Kashmir, 81, 512, 519, 521
- Kashmir and Abbasid battles, 521
- Katagin, 313, 315, 372, 385, 389–90, 393–95
- Kebi'neng, 7–8, 10–13, 66–67, 365
- Ke-da-ke, 507–8, 510
- Kefu, 185
- Kelakao, 492
- Kelulun River, 317–18, 408
- Kerait chieftain Wang-han, 398, 408
- Keraits, 282, 317, 370, 383, 385–86, 388–90, 392–99, 402–4, 408, 418–20
- Keraits & Kara-Khitay, 420
- Keraits and Timuchin, 388, 397
- Kerman, 432–33, 446, 451, 506, 510
- Kerulen River, 308, 314, 316, 380, 391, 394, 417, 457–58, 687
- Ke Shaomin, 321, 324, 368, 370–72, 442–44, 496
- Ke-tu-yu, 72–73
- Ke-wu-la, 283, 406
- Keyimen river and mountain pass, 406
- Khabul-khan, 308, 374–75, 377–78, 384–85, 392, 401
- Khabul-khan's elder son, 374, 384, 391–92, 408
- Khachi Khulug, 373–74
- Khadie-khan, 423, 427, 429
- Khalka River, 386–87, 389, 393
- Khalkha Mongols, 401
- Khalkha River, 385
- Khan Batu, 477, 483, 504
- Khan Berke, 523, 687–88, 690
- Khan A'bo, 27
- Khangai Mountain area, 305, 425
- Khara Khoto, 270–71, 454
- Khatun city, 306–7, 311, 399, 425
- Khentii Mountain, 388, 417
- Kheshig* ('qie-xue' bodyguards), 405, 441, 452, 659
- Khing'an Mountain, 13, 307–8, 311–12, 316, 327, 380–81
- Khitan ancestor Qishou Khan, 8
- Khitan ancestors, 78, 255
- Khitan ancestry, 359
- Khitan and Tongluo tribes, 56
- Khitan Burak-hadjib, 451
- Khitan Changsheng-jun army, 247, 304
- Khitan characters, 425
- Khitan chieftain, 16, 67–68, 71, 76, 298
- Khitan chieftain Dahe Duoluo, 68
- Khitan chieftain Dahe Kuge, 68
- Khitan chieftain Dahe Mohui, 68
- Khitan chieftain Li Dapu, 50
- Khitan chieftain Li Shihuo, 50, 71
- Khitan chieftain Tiyinghemiao, 156
- Khitan chieftain Yaonian Zuli, 73
- Khitan chieftain Yelü Abaoji, 77, 153, 298, 305
- Khitan crown prince, 374
- Khitan defectors, 250, 280, 317, 408
- Khitan Dila-shi, 325
- Khitan Di-lie, 380
- Khitan dowager-empress Shulü Ping, 257
- Khitan dowager-empress Yanyan, 273
- Khitan dynastic embodiment, 301
- Khitan emissary, 16, 153, 212, 225
- Khitan emperors, 163–65, 226–27, 253–54, 274, 300, 302–3
- Khitan Emperor Jingzong, 226, 231
- Khitan Emperor Liao-muzong, 212, 225
- Khitan Emperor Muzong, 226
- Khitan Emperor Shengzong, 227, 231, 237, 253–54, 257
- Khitan Emperor Taizong, 159
- Khitan Emperor Taizu, 170, 257
- Khitan Emperor Tianzuodi, 280
- Khitan Emperor Xingzong, 254, 257, 272, 274
- Khitan Emperor Yelü Deguang, 157
- Khitan Emperor Yelü Longxu, 232
- Khitan emperor Yelü Ruan, 166
- Khitan empresses, 227, 235, 237, 254
- Khitan Empress Xiao-fei, 246–47, 256, 303
- Khitan Empress Yanyan, 226
- Khitan founder-emperor Yelü Abaoji, 273, 393
- Khitan General Luo Wuzheng, 70
- Khitan General Ma-da, 165
- Khitan General Yelü Xiuge, 231–32
- Khitan General Xiaotalan, 234
- Khitan General Yelü Dilie, 213
- Khitan General Yelü Yudu, 303
- Khitan General Zhang Lian, 165
- Khitan Jiagu Changge, 412

- Khitan Ji-qin-ha-ri, 307  
 Khitan-Jurchen minister Zuo-qi-gong, killed, 247, 256, 304  
 Khitan Khan Li Huaixiu, 74  
 Khitan khans, 48, 79, 367  
 Khitan Khan Su, 76  
 Khitan Khan Xianzhi, 76  
 Khitan Khan Yaonian Qulie, 73  
 Khitan Khan Yelan, 74  
 Khitan Khan Yelü Xian, 273  
 Khitan kings, 72–73, 246, 256, 280  
 Khitan King Liao-wang, 348, 422  
 Khitan King Qinde, 77  
 Khitan King Xi-er-zhi, 77  
 Khitan King Yan-wang, 231  
 Khitan King Yelü Xuedu, 458, 477  
 Khitan legends, 8  
 Khitan Liao, 172–73, 226–28, 233–34, 246–48, 255–57, 299–305  
 Khitan Liao and Jurchen Jin, 247, 256, 304, 375  
 Khitan Liao and Northern Soong, 248  
 Khitan Liao and Posterior Jinn, 161, 262  
 Khitan Liao and Southern Soong, 246  
 Khitan Liao dynasty's demise, 255  
 Khitan Liao emperors, 311  
 Khitan Liao Emperor Daozong, 257, 298, 311, 399  
 Khitan Liao Emperor Jingzong, 173, 226, 253, 257  
 Khitan Liao Emperor Muzong, 253, 257  
 Khitan Liao Emperor Shengzong, 263  
 Khitan Liao Emperor Shizong, 257  
 Khitan/Liao Emperor Taizong, 170, 257  
 Khitan Liao Emperor Taizu, 79, 153, 311  
 Khitan Liao Emperor Tianzuodi, 246–48, 254, 256–57, 300–302, 304  
 Khitan Liao Emperor Tianzuodi in early A, 247, 303  
 Khitan Liao Emperor Yelü Deguang, 78  
 Khitan marshal Yelü Dabu'er, 399  
 Khitan ministers Xiao Xiala and Yelü Oulisi, 77  
 Khitan minister Xiao Chuo, 311  
 Khitan mutineers, 333  
 Khitan Pishi-bu, 303  
 Khitan Princess Cheng'an, 279  
 Khitan (Kara-khitai) princess Hunhu, 307, 398  
 Khitan princess Yelü Nanxian, 279  
 Khitan Princess Xingping, 272, 274  
 Khitan Princess Xingping-gongzhu, 267  
 Khitan relief army for Shi Jingtang, 159  
 Khitan ruler Burak-hadjib, 446  
 Khitan script, 78  
 Khitan Dong-dan kingdom, 308, 374  
 Khitan Shang-jing city, 256, 302, 376  
 Khitan Shimo Anzhi, 596  
 Khitan Shimo-Ming'an, 411  
 Khitan Shulü, 322, 410  
 Khitan siege of Yunzhou, 149  
 Khitan-Soong Chanyuan Peace Accord, 267, 274  
 Khitan-Tangut wars, 241, 272, 274  
 Khitan Tielin-jun, 232  
 Khitan Tu-man-da-er, 680  
 Khitan Xijin-fu city, 231  
 Khitan Yelü Ahbaoji's death and *Zou Khitan Yelü Ahbaoji Hongsizhuang*, 153  
 Khitan Yelü Liuge, 319  
 Khitan Yelü Tuhua, 321  
 Khitan Yelü Xue-du, 415  
 Khitan Yisheng-jun, 248  
 Khitan Yishi-bu, 302  
 Khitan Zhuo-da, 333  
 Khitans, 27–101, 143–213, 219–51, 261–87, 295–381, 385–475  
     ancient, 365  
     ethnic, 322, 327, 410, 414  
 Khitans and Jurchens, 227, 254, 299, 381  
 Khitans and Mohe, 37  
 Khitans and Mongols, 365, 723  
 Khitans and Posterior Liang, 149  
 Khitans and Shiwei, 36  
 Khitans and Soong, 273  
 Khitans and Tanguts, 224, 226, 233, 274  
 Khitans and Zu-bu (Tartars), 307  
 Khitans' invasion and sacking of Pingzhou, 146  
 Khitans-mediated truce, 245  
 Khitay kingdom, 257, 305–6, 393, 425  
 Khoja, 507, 509–10, 572–73, 583  
 Khojend, 429, 434–35  
 Khorasan, 431–32, 434, 437, 439, 510  
 Khorchin Mongols, 402  
 Khotan, 26, 42, 84, 91  
 Khubilai, 509–17, 523–26, 599, 601–16, 657–67, 671–76, 683–90  
 Khubilai Defeating Contender-khan Arik-Buka, 659  
 Khubilai Khan, 312, 376, 408, 475, 522, 608–10, 612, 614, 631, 634, 653, 657, 661–62, 666–69, 671, 687  
 Khubilai Khan's Sinicization, 608  
 Khubilai's attacking E'zhou, 603, 617  
 Khubilai's Death, 686, 690  
 Khubilai's enthronement, 606, 608, 657  
 Khubilai's motivation in invading Japan, 674  
 Khubilai's reign, 446, 459, 671  
 Khubilai's relocation, 606  
 Khubilai's son-in-law Hu-la-chu, 618  
 Khubilai's sons, 609, 678  
 Khubilai's wife Cha-bi, 606

Khubilai and Koryo, 672  
 Khuc Thua, 209  
 Khunan, 448  
 Khurasan, 431, 439, 451  
*khuriltai*, 317, 408, 458, 477  
 Khwajah, 426  
 Khwarazm, 344-5, 407, 415, 418, 422-23, 426-29, 431-2, 434-35  
 Khwarazm Campaign, 388, 426-27, 510  
 Khwarazm Muslim, 418, 425-26  
 Khwarazm shah, 403, 422, 426-28, 431-3, 436  
 Kieu Cong Tien, 209  
 Kiev (Qiwa-cheng), 449-50, 484, 486-91, 504  
 King Bela IV, 496, 499-500, 503  
 King Bohai-wang A, 186  
 King Bohai-wang Gao Jixing, 179, 186  
 King Chu-wang Ma Yin, 208-9  
 King Han-wang Yang Liang, 24, 30  
 King Hedan, 658  
 King Jinn-wang Li Cunxu, 143, 146, 149  
 King Jinn-wang Li Keyong, 138, 141  
 King Lujiang-wang Li Yuan<sup>4</sup>, 39  
 King Lu-wang Li Conghou, 171, 262  
 King Moge, 600  
 King Mu-wang Li Cunyi, 155  
 King Nanping-wang A, 186  
 King Qi-wang Li Yuanji, 36, 39  
 King Shu-wang Wang Jian, 138, 141  
 King Toghrul Wang-han, 282, 406, 562  
 King Wu-wang Yang Longyan, 192  
 King Wu-Yue Qian Liu, 143, 189  
 King Wu-Yue-wang Qian Chu, 195, 211  
 King Xin'an-wang Li Yi, 73, 94  
 King Xingwu-wang Chen Yan (Vietnamese), 682  
 King Xining-wang Ya-han-sha, 705-6  
 King Zhennan-wang (Mongol), 681  
 Kipchak campaigns, 427  
 Kipchak Khanate, 447, 505, 585, 659-60, 687  
 Kipchaks, 420-21, 426-28, 447-51, 483-84, 487-88, 498-500  
 Kirghiz (Kirgiz), 7, 76, 79, 365, 365, 370, 386, 392-94, 398-400, 403-4, 407  
 Kitbuqa, 519, 521, 523  
 Kiyat-Borjigins, 370-71, 374, 380, 391, 660  
 Kiyats, 370-71, 374-75, 377, 384, 387  
 Kladsko, 496  
 Kliazma River, 486  
 Klis Fortress, 502-3  
 Koguryo, 14, 18, 24, 30-32, 38, 43-44, 67-68, 70, 84, 296-99  
 Koguryo campaign, 31-2, 43, 47  
 Koke-temur, 699, 710, 713, 717-18, 720-23  
 Kolomna, 485-86  
 Kong Daofu, 227, 237, 239, 254  
 Kong Jinn, 661  
 Kong Qingjiao, 702  
 Kong Shouzheng, 230  
 Kong Wei, 124, 128-29  
 Kong Xing, 718  
 Kong Xun, 158  
 Kong Yanzhou, 538  
 Kong Yuancuo, 470, 481  
 Kongkeng, 645  
 Koran capital city Kai-jing, 348, 422, 669  
 Korea, 291, 293-95, 458-9, 649, 669-72, 714  
 Korean campaigns, 16, 29-30, 32, 68  
 Korean Pan Fu, 672  
 Korean rebel Jin Tongjing, 616  
 Korgas, 405, 520, 688  
 Korneuberg, 502  
 Koros River, 497, 498-9  
 Koryo, 227, 254, 299-300, 348, 418, 458-59, 670, 669-75  
 Koryo and Soong, 274  
 Koryo army, 417, 671, 673-4, 709, 723  
 Koryo crown prince, 459, 607  
 Koryo emissaries, 669, 672  
 Koryo invasion by Sui Emperor Yangdi, 32  
 Koryo kings, 227, 348, 418, 422, 459, 482, 669-73, 709, 723  
 Koryo King Gaozong, 348, 482  
 Koryo King Wang Che, 669  
 Koryo King Wang Chun, 674  
 Koryo King Wang Zhi, 671  
 Koryo successor-king Wu-wang, 723  
 Kostroma, 486, 489  
 Kotman River, 448  
 Kotony, 500  
 Kouwen-buhua, 572, 574-75  
 Kou Zhun, 234-35  
 Koyiten, 389-90, 398  
 Kozelsk, 449, 487  
 Kozlov, 270-71  
 Krakow, 492-94, 501  
 Krakow and Sandomir siege, 493  
 Kronstadt, 498-99  
 Kuangguo-jun, 137, 349, 601  
 Kuchlug, 344, 393-94, 398, 403-5, 420, 425-26  
 Kuchlug and Kara-Khitay, 403, 415, 420, 423, 425  
 Kuchlug's usurpation of Kara-khitai, 404  
 Ku-er-du-ku, 519-20  
 Kuge, 68  
 Kuhestan, 519  
 Kuimen, 326, 584-85

Kui-wu-gu, 311, 399  
 Kuiyuna-badu, 460–61  
 Kuizhou, 178, 182, 584–85, 587–89, 639  
 Kumo-xi barbarians, 8, 400, 447  
 Kumtag Desert, 86  
 Kun-du-lun River, 4  
 Kunling Protector-General Office for control, 108  
 Kunming, 74, 513, 516–17, 590  
 Kunwu-shi people, 83  
 Kuo4zhou, 260, 267–68, 279, 281  
 Kuo-chu, 482-3, 507, 509, 572–73  
 Kuo-duan, 577–78, 580–83  
 Kuokuo, 624  
 Kuotiewu-Alan meetings, 509  
 Kuo-yi-tian (Koyiten), 389–90, 398  
 Kuozhou, 91, 96  
 Kuqa, 42, 44, 47, 90–91, 93–94, 195, 404  
 Ku-qing people, 498  
 Kura River, 448, 452  
*khuriltai*, 477, 509  
 Kursk, 449–50  
 Kusele, 695, 697–99  
 Kushan Yuezhi, 26  
 Kushui, 51  
 Ku-ta-yi-er-ka's Mongol, 520  
 Kuthen, 500  
 Cuman Khan Khotyan (Kuthen, Kotony),  
 Kutula, 384  
 Kuwen Butu, 463–64  
 Kuyavia, 492–93  
 Kuzhu, 592  
 Kuzhu-ai, 587, 593, 596–97, 600  
 Kwakchu, 669  
 Kyrgyzstan, 47, 93, 95, 427  
 Kyzyl Kum, 429

## L

Lady Huarui-fu-ren, 182–83  
 Laha-he River, 67, 78  
 Lahor, 445  
 Lai Hu'er, 31-2  
 Lai Tian (Lai Zhen), 53  
 Lai Xingguo, 621, 625  
 Lai Zhengsun, 718  
 Lailiu river, 301  
 Laishan, 88  
 Laizhou, 197, 201, 294, 329, 335  
 lamas, 578, 663, 706  
 Lamasar Fort, 520  
 Lan2zhou, 125, 213, 230, 330  
 Langzhou, 157–58, 177, 184–85, 187–88, 593  
 Lan Shiji, 543  
 Lan Yue and Mu Ying's expedition army, 722  
 Lanzhou, 96, 272, 275–76, 284  
 Latter Shu, 154, 175, 181–82  
 Leczyca, 492–93  
 Legnica, 494–96  
 Lei Maan, 136, 184-5, 190  
 Lei Wanchun, 55  
 Lei Yan'gong, 184-5  
 Lei Yanwei, 136, 184, 187, 190  
 Lei Ye, 125  
 Lei Zhong, 542  
 Leibo of Luzhou, 596, 616, 636  
*Lei-gong Shi* (*Tai-yi* [grand heavenly one] & *Lei-gong* [thunder-bolt grand duke's striking rules] *Shi* [divination astrolabes]), 649  
 Leizhou, 645–46, 648  
 Lengjing, 50, 71–72  
 Lesser Poland, 492, 494  
 Li An'quan, 269, 282–83, 405–7, 422  
 Li Bangrui, 563  
 Li Bao, 544–45, 548  
 Li Baochen, 58, 75  
 Li Bao's Navy Battle against the Jurchens at the Shiri-dao Island, 544  
 Li Bi, 54, 59, 103  
 Li Bi4, 98, 110  
 Li Bian, 133, 192–93  
 Li Boyuan, 571, 573  
 Li Cengbo, 514, 516–17, 589, 596, 605  
 Li Cha'er, 705, 709–10  
 Li Chan, 119  
 Li Chang, 15, 297, 366  
 Li Changfu, 64, 116, 118, 124–25  
 Li Cheng, 103, 533, 536-7, 540, 542  
 Li Chenggui, 709, 723  
 Li Chengsi, 123–25, 129, 131, 133, 135–36, 189  
 Li Chongjin, 222–23  
 Li Chongjing, 169  
 Li Chongjun, 49  
 Li Chongmao, 49  
 Li Chun, 59  
 Li Chunyan, 204  
 Li Chunyou, 269, 282, 403, 405  
 Li Conghou, 158–59, 171, 262  
 Li Congke, 158–59, 171, 262  
 Li Congshan, 194  
 Li Cunjin, 150  
 Li Cunshen, 146, 148, 150  
 Li Cunxian, 149  
 Li Cunxiao, 121, 127, 129–30  
 Li Cunxin, 121, 130, 132–33

- Li Cunxu, 141–56, 171, 181–82, 186, 261  
 Li Cunzhang, 113, 142, 144, 147–48  
 Li Daliang and Wang Dagan (pen names), 380–81  
 Li Dapu, 72–73  
 Li Debiao, 674–75  
 Li Dehui, 636–37, 639, 658  
 Li Deming, 236, 239, 265–68  
 Li Deyu, 61–62, 101  
 Li Fang, 204, 229  
 Li Fei, 628–29, 667–68  
 Li Fuguo, 57  
 Li Gang, 249–50, 495, 529, 536, 538  
 Li Guangbi, 22, 53–54, 56, 96  
 Li Guangrui, 226, 253, 263  
 Li Guangyan, 110  
 Li Guochang, 112–14, 119–21, 460, 479, 565  
 Li Guochang/Li Keyong, 114  
 Li Guozhe, 73  
 Li Hanzhi, 127–28  
 Li Hao, 24  
 Li Heng, 54, 57, 60, 619, 645–7, 682  
 Li Hong, 44–46, 179, 531  
 Li Hongyi, 193, 206–7  
 Li Huaiguang, 58  
 Li Huaixian, 57–58, 75  
 Li Huaixiu (Khitan khan), 73  
 Li Ji4ji2, 180  
 Li Jian, 177, 190, 626  
 Li Jiancheng, 38–39  
 Li Jiancheng, 38–39  
 Lijiang, 93, 514–15, 590  
 Li-jiang River, 646  
 Li Jichong, 144, 147, 179–80, 263, 267  
 Li Jihui, 137, 142, 147, 261  
 Li Jiji, 154–55  
 Li Jiji and Guo Chongtao, 154, 181–82  
 Li Jilin, 149, 154  
 Li Jiluan, 143, 261  
 Li Jing, 40–41, 193–94  
 Li Jingzhong, 68–69, 113  
 Li Jinqun, 162  
 Li Jiongxiu, 337  
 Li Jipeng, 233, 263  
 Li Jiqian, 233, 235–36, 263–66, 273  
 Li Jiyun, 233, 263, 273  
 Li Jue, 350, 557, 642  
 Li Jue2, 626  
 Li Jun, 114  
 Li Kaigu, 70–71  
 Li Kailuo, 71–72  
 Li Keju, 114, 119, 124, 130  
 Li Kerui, 226, 233, 253, 263, 269  
 Li Kewen, 263  
 Li Kexian, 263  
 Li Kexiu, 121, 125, 127  
 Li Keyin, 204  
 Li Keyong, 63–4, 113–14, 119–24, 127, 129–34, 136–38, 142, 170–71  
 Li Keyong and Yelü Abaoji's generations, 159  
 Li Keyong and Zhu Wen, 123, 127  
 Li Keyong attacking Liu Ren'gong, 133  
 Li Keyuan, 263  
 Li Kuangchou, 130, 132  
 Li Kuangwei, 130  
 Li Kuge, 68–69  
 Li Liang, 379  
 Li Liangzuo, 241–42, 269, 273–74  
 Li Linfu, 51, 95  
 Li Lizun, 267  
 Li Longji, 49–50, 54, 57  
 Li Maozhen, 64, 129–32, 134, 137–38, 141–44, 176–80  
 Li Maozhen and Jingnan satrap Wang Xingyu, 131, 178  
 Li Maozhen and Wang Xingyu, 131, 178  
 Li Mi, 31–35, 54, 74, 103  
 Li Mi4, 98, 110–11  
 Li Mi and Wang Bodang, 35  
 Li Peiye, 288  
 Li Ping, 165, 194–95, 465, 480  
 Li Pusheng, 705, 712  
 Li Pusheng, 705  
 Li Qianbu, 454, 488  
 Li Qianbu and Mongol General Hudu-timu'er, 454  
 Li Qianshun, 247, 269, 279, 281  
 Li Quan, 346–48, 350–52, 354, 358–61, 455, 472, 554–61, 561–63  
 Li Quanlüe, 60  
 Li Quelü (limp mule Li), 338  
 Li Rang, 158, 183  
 Li Renda, 193, 206–7  
 Li Renfu, 143, 171, 261  
 Li Renju, 157  
 Li Renxiao, 269, 281–82, 405  
 Li Ruzhou, 356, 559  
 Li Shanchang, 711–12  
 Li Shaobin, 141, 150, 152–53  
 Li Shaoqin, 152  
 Li Shaorong, 154–55  
 Li Shaoshen, 151, 153–55  
 Li Shaozhen, 152–53, 155  
 Li Shen, 337–38  
 Li Shenfu, 136, 187, 189–90, 193, 197  
 Li Shidao, 60

- Li Shih-min, 38  
 Li Shihuo, 71–72  
 Li Shimin, 35–39  
 Li Shouzheng, 163, 165, 182, 220  
 Li Shouzheng and Zhang Yanze, 163, 172  
 Li Shouzhong, 355, 359  
 Li Shun, 233  
 Li Si'an, 141, 143–46, 261  
 Li Siben, 146, 148  
 Li Sigong, 143, 146, 148, 171, 261  
 Li Sijian, 143, 171, 261  
 Li Siqu, 709, 718, 720–21, 723  
 Li Siyuan, 148–53, 155–59, 171, 181–82, 261–62  
     served Emperor, 159  
     successor-emperor, 180, 186  
 Li Sizhou, defeated, 131, 178  
 Li Song, 59, 163  
 Li Tan<sup>3</sup>, 598, 601, 607, 610–12, 659–61  
 Li Tangbin and Ge Congzhou, 120  
 Li Tao, 223, 228  
 Li Tieqiang, 347, 549, 555–56  
 Li Ting, 337–40, 553–54, 619–20, 621, 624, 674–75  
 Li Tingzhi, 609–10, 619, 621, 626–27, 630, 640–41  
 Li Tongjie, 60, 538  
 Li Weiyue, 58, 75  
 Li Wenzhong, 711, 721  
 Li Wu, 709  
 Li Xian, 45, 275–76  
 Li Xianzhong, 281, 530–31, 539–40, 545–48, 580  
 Li Xianzhong and Shao Hongyuan, 548  
 Li Xinchuan, 247, 309–11, 320–21, 375–76, 381  
 Li Yantu, 209  
 Li Yichang, 143, 171, 261  
 Li Yichao, 153, 171, 261–62  
 Li Yin, 213  
 Li Ying, 334, 337  
 Li Yiyin, 153, 162, 165–67, 171–74, 226, 262–63  
 Li Yiyin's Tangut, 226, 263  
 Li Yongqi, 530  
 Li Youjin, 118  
 Li Yu, 57, 143, 194–96, 200  
 Li Yu<sup>4</sup>, 135, 191  
 Li Yu<sup>4</sup>yu, 72  
 Li Yuan, 21, 24, 29, 34–36, 44  
 Li Yu and Liu Wan's Fu<sup>1</sup>-zhou and Yanzhou relief  
     army, 261  
 Li Yuanhao, 237, 239–41, 267–74, 405  
 Li Yuanji, 38–39  
 Li Yuan, 35  
 Li Yuanzhong, 59, 100  
 Li Yun, 124–25, 157, 167, 222–23  
 Li Yu, 212, 225  
 Li Zaiqin, 169, 222  
 Li Zhao, 157–58  
 Li Zhe/Xian, 45–46, 48  
 Li Zhi, 44, 55, 476, 564  
 Li Zhu, 138, 141  
 Li Zhuo, 114  
 Li Zongmin, 61  
 Li Zunxu, 269, 283, 287, 422  
 Li-wulu-tie'mu'er, 723  
 Li<sup>2</sup>zhou, 178, 180, 343, 593, 595  
 Li<sup>3</sup>zhou, 185, 188, 585, 704  
 Li<sup>4</sup>zhou, 181–82, 554, 564–66, 586–87, 592, 596–97  
 Li<sup>4</sup>zhou city, 566  
 Li<sup>4</sup>zhou-lu circuit's army, 567  
 Li<sup>4</sup>zhou of northern Sichuan to attack Kuimen, 596  
 Lian Chongyu, 204–6  
 Lian Heh, 108  
 Lian Jiankang, 108  
 Lian Jie, 613  
 Lian Xixian[2], 626, 631–3, 667  
 Lian Xixian<sup>2</sup>'s Mongol peace delegation, 632  
 Lian Xixian[4], 512, 596, 602–3, 607–8, 613, 626, 631,  
     657–8, 660, 662, 665  
 Lian You, 514  
 Liang Gao, 474  
 Liang Jianfang, 44  
 Liang Kezheng, 209  
 Liang Shidu, 36, 41, 68  
 Liang Emperor Modi, 141, 147, 149, 151  
 Liang Emperor Taizu, 141, 146  
 Liang Emperor Zhu Yougui, 141, 146  
 Liangzhou, 48, 76, 93–94, 99–101, 109, 240, 265–67,  
     454–56  
 Lianjiang River, 475, 569  
 Lianshui, 189, 345, 350, 473, 543, 548, 557, 570,  
     598–99, 607, 610–11  
 Lianzhou, 210, 621, 628, 661  
 Liao<sup>2</sup>zhou, 150, 342, 352, 355, 408  
 Liao emperors, 254, 279, 302, 305  
 Liao Emperor Daozong, 227, 254  
 Liao Emperor Muzong, 165, 173, 211  
 Liao Emperor Shengzong, 226, 234  
 Liao Emperor Shizong, 164, 173  
 Liao Emperor Taizong, 172  
 Liao Emperor Tianzuodi, 255–56, 279, 305  
 Liao Emperor Xingzong, 227, 298  
 Liao Emperor Xuanzong, 246–47, 256, 303  
 Liao-e-shui River, 305  
 Liao-he River, 8, 24, 30, 32, 67–68, 325, 366,  
     453, 690  
 Liao Shi, 8, 301–2, 311–12, 368, 375–76  
 Liaoyang, 68, 70, 298, 301–2, 414

- Liao Shuang, 209  
 Liao Yan, Liao Kuangning and Peng Shigao, 187  
 Liao Yanruo, 201  
 Liao Yingzhong and Weng Yinglong, 617  
 Liao Yong'an, 705, 708, 712  
 Liao Yongzhong, 714, 717–18, 722  
 Liaozhou, 68, 330  
 libraries  
   emperor's threaded books' library, 230  
   Chongwen Library, 242  
   Jurchen library, 470  
   Northern Soong library, 251  
   Southern Soong library, 634  
   Zhao Kuangning's personal library  
   Alamut library., 521  
 Liegnitz, 494–95, 500  
 Lihzhou, 104, 178, 180, 515  
 Lin Delong, 716  
 Lin Gong and Lin Ying, 716–17  
 Lin Mao, 647  
 Lin Min, 478  
 Lin Renhan, 194, 206  
 Lin Renzhao, 194, 206  
 Lin Shouliang, 205  
 Lin Tongzhi, 644  
 Lin Xing, 204  
 Lin Yan (Koryo minister), 459, 671–2  
 Lin Yan (Huang Chao's nephew), 123  
 Lin Zhonghu, 552  
 Lin'an, 196–97, 534, 570, 629–31, 632–34, 642–44,  
   648, 668  
 Linfen, 338, 344, 353–54, 720  
 Ling Tingzhi, 641  
 Ling Xiao, 647  
 Ling Zhen, 646  
 Lingbao, 53, 465, 538  
 Lingbi, 345, 540, 548, 550  
*linghu*, 67, 316, 374, 383  
 Lingpingzhai forts, 245, 277  
*lingqum*, 374, 383  
 Lingwu, 54, 99, 162, 235–36, 264–5, 272  
 Lingzhou, 99, 101, 109, 233, 236, 243–45, 263–66,  
   275–77, 282, 286, 454–55  
 Lingzhou & Qingzhou, 96, 260  
 Lingzhou Yinchuan, 287, 360, 455  
 Linhuai, 55, 551  
 Linhuang, 311, 313, 376, 380  
 Linping, 533  
 Lintan, 101, 259–60, 456, 551  
 Lintao-jun army, 95  
 Linxia, 91, 243, 245, 275, 278  
 Linzhou, 229, 233, 236, 265, 271–73, 276–77, 280  
 literati, 179, 181, 189, 193, 197  
 Lithuania, 493, 510  
 Liu2 Yue4, 633  
 Liu An'guo, 472–73  
 Liu Bao, 547–48  
 Liu Bingzhong, 350, 512, 608, 611, 661–62  
 Liu Bolin, 320, 327, 329, 343, 413  
 Liu Bolin and Khitan Jiagu Changge, 412  
 Liu Boxiang, 715–16  
 Liu Chang, 210–11  
 Liu Chang/Emperor Houzhu, 210  
 Liu Changgong, 34  
 Liu Changzu, 554  
 Liu Changzuo, 244, 275–76  
 Liu Cheng, 210, 225, 358  
 Liu Chengjun, 166  
 Liu Chong, 166–67, 173, 211, 220  
 Liu Congxiao, 193, 205–7  
 Liu Cun, 131, 136–37, 184, 187, 190  
 Liu Duo, 338  
 Liu Erzu, 338, 354, 358, 559–60  
 Liu Futong, 702–3, 707–10, 717  
 Liu Gongchuo, 110  
 Liu Guangshi, 532–33, 536, 538  
 Liu Guangyi, 182–83  
 Liu Guojie, 619–20, 685, 689  
 Liu Heida, 37–38  
 Liu Heima, 356, 358–59, 464, 613–15  
 Liu Hongxi, 210  
 Liu Ji, 112, 703, 713  
 Liu Jianfeng, 137, 187  
 Liu Jin, 680  
 Liu Jixiang, 211  
 Liu Jixing, 210  
 Liu Jiyuan, 212–13, 229–30  
 Liu Jun, 167, 209, 212, 625  
 Liu Jun/Emperor Ruizong, 212  
 Liu Jurong, 116, 128  
 Liu Kenu, 56  
 Liu Lun, 349, 424  
 Liu Mengyan, 629–32, 648, 665  
 Liu Min/Emperor Shizu, 166, 212  
 Liu Mingyin, 665–66  
 Liu Ping, 237, 240, 271, 273  
 Liu Qi, 535, 537, 540–43, 545–46  
 Liu Qian, 207  
 Liu-Qi dynasty, 311, 537, 539  
   Zhang Bangchang and Liu Yu's puppet Zhang-  
   chu and Liu-qi [puppet] regimes, 332  
 Liu Qihua, 85  
 Liu Quan, 576, 625  
 Liu Ren'gong, 130, 132–33, 138, 141, 147



Liu Ren'gong and Zhu Wen, 132  
 Liu Renjie, 609, 628, 661  
 Liu She4, 209  
 Liu Shen, 619, 644, 677, 685  
 Liu Shenli, 91  
 Liu Shiju, 309, 378–79  
 Liu Shiyong, 629–30, 632–33  
 Liu Shouguang, 77, 141, 144–47, 154  
 Liu Shouwen, 141  
 Liu Soong, 88  
 Liu Soong Emperor Wendi, 88  
 Liu Taiping, 524, 608, 657–58  
 Liu Ting'an, 572  
 Liu Wan's Fulzhou and Yanzhou relief army, 143  
 Liu Wei, 191  
 Liu Wenjing, 29, 35  
 Liu Wuzhou, 29, 36–37  
 Liu Xiaozhong, 629  
 Liu Xin, 3, 13, 202  
 Liu Xiongfei, 526, 586, 600, 608  
 Liu Xun, 135, 143, 147, 149  
 Liu Yan, 187–88, 193, 209–10, 684  
 Liuyi, 620–21, 642, 647–48, 677  
 Liu Yi, 634, 723  
 Liu Yin, 138, 175, 207–9  
 Liu Yingyan, 202  
 Liu Yu, 11, 520, 522, 530, 538-0  
 Liu Yuan, 14  
 Liu Yuanli, 615  
 Liu Yue, 668  
 Liu Yun, 166–67  
 Liu Zheng, 586–87, 598, 613–16, 618, 620–21, 623–24, 666–67  
 Liu Zhengyan, 249, 532–33  
 Liu Zhijun, 129, 137–38, 141–44, 147–48, 180, 261  
 Liu Zhijun and Wang Chongshi's Posterior Liang, 179  
 Liu Zhiyuan, 159–62, 164–66, 173, 211, 262  
 Liu Ziyu, 535–36  
 Liu Zuo, 568 Liugu Tibetan, 163, 236, 264-6  
 Liuge, 412, 417–18  
 Liugu Tibetan, 163, 236, 264-6  
 Liugui, 51  
*liuhou*, (resident/retained general), 118-20, 125, 127–28, 151–53, 187, 201, 207-9, 265  
*liushou*, 29, 36, 312, 319, 337  
 Lo-lo people, 80  
 Long Fangling, 678  
 Long2zhou, 312, 586, 597, 600  
 Long2-zhou, 103, 181, 213, 230  
 Long2zhou, 99  
 Long'an, 277, 326, 333, 412  
 Longhuazhou, 78  
 Longhu-jun, 142  
 Longjumeau, 452, 507  
 Longmen, 550–51, 566, 572, 582  
 Longnan, 536–37, 565–67, 577–79, 592–93, 598  
 Longshan army, 551  
 Longwan, 710, 713  
 Longweizhou, 619, 622, 674  
 Longxi, 85, 88, 456  
 Long-xi, 5, 181, 578  
 Longxiang army, 145–46  
 Longxing Peace Accord, 547, 549  
 Longzhou, 284, 286, 320, 536–37, 543  
 lord, 3, 299–300, 427, 429  
 Lord Shun, 2–3, 6, 83, 86, 293  
 Lord Yao, 83  
 Lord Yao's Qi3-surname Lih2 land, 16  
 Lord Yu, 85–86, 88, 258, 609, 612  
 L-shaped Chuy River, 404  
 L-shaped Han-shui River, 589  
 Lu Baoji, 70  
 Lu Chong, 203  
 Lu Chu, 34  
 Lu Chunyan, 204  
 Lu Dan, 115, 117  
 Lu Fucheng, 258  
 Lu Yanchang, 202, 209  
 Lu Guangchou, 200, 208–9  
 Lu Guangmu, 208  
 Lu Guangxuan, 199  
 Lu Guchui (Lu Guzhui), 459  
 Lu Huaizhong, 212  
 Lu Ji, 198  
 Lu Jiang, 195  
 Lu Jiong, 53, 55–56, 75  
 Lu Ju, 208  
 Lu Mingyue, 33  
 Lu Pi, 179  
 Lu Pu, 584  
 Lu Qiongxian, 210  
 Lu Quancheng, 52-3  
 Lu Shang, 534  
 Lu Shenzhi, 136  
 Lu Shenzhong, 112, 136  
 Lu Sigong, 99  
 Lu Wenjin, 146, 148–49, 152, 155, 162  
     Lu Wenjin and Wang Yu invaded Ying2-zhou (Hejian) and Zhuozhou, 151  
 Lu Xie, 117  
 Lu Xiufu, 633, 642, 646–47, 668  
 Lu Xiwen, 626, 645  
 Lu Xixiong, 247, 309, 320, 334, 381

Lu Yanchang, 202  
 Lu Yanhong, 121, 128, 175  
 Lu Yanwei, 130  
 Lu Yi, 52  
 Lu Yang, 59, 100  
 Lu Yue, 198  
 Lu Yunsheng, 605  
 Lu Zhi, 569  
 Lu Zhongxian, 548  
 Lu Zong, 330  
 Lu Zushang, 34  
 Lü Chongmao, 36  
 Lü Da, 592  
 Lü Dasheng, 642  
 Lü Fengnian, 595  
 Lü Gongzhe, 244  
 Lü Huiqing, 242, 277  
 Lü Shikui, 625, 628–29, 631, 648  
 Lü Shimeng, 628, 631, 633  
 Lü Shizhou, 208  
 Lü Side, 581  
 Lü Simian, 8, 381  
 Lü Sizong, 581  
 Lü Wende, 525, 574, 595–97, 601, 606–7, 613–14, 616–19, 628  
 Lü Wende and Lü Wenhuan brothers, 592, 595  
 Lü Wende and Xiang Shibi, 597  
 Lü Wendao, 525  
 Lü Wenfu, 628  
 Lü Wenhuan, 592, 595, 614, 617–24, 627–28, 633, 666–67  
 Lü Wenxin, 604  
 Lü Wenxing, 626  
 Lü Xianglai, 51  
 Lü Xiujing, 94  
 Lü Yao, 177  
 Lü Yihao, 533  
 Lü Yizhong, 110  
 Lü Yongzhi, 117, 126  
 Lü Yuejiang, 97  
 Lü Zhen, 110  
 Lü Huiqing, 242, 277  
 Lu2-jiang, 516, 593  
 Lu2zhou, 126, 189, 532–33, 538, 542, 575–76  
 Lu4zhou, 118, 120–22, 127, 141–42, 160, 343, 354–55  
 Lu4zhou, 54, 110, 167  
 Luan-he River, 78  
 Luan-shui River, 512  
 Luanzhou, 161, 172, 247, 256, 325, 330  
 Lublin, 492–93  
 Lucheng city, 638  
 Lu-dan, 497  
 Luding, 590–91  
 Ludongzan, 90–92  
 Lüeyang, 362, 554, 562, 566, 578–80, 598  
 Lüèyang, 460–61  
 Lugang, 606, 626–28  
 Luhe, 168, 194, 198, 221, 551–52  
 Lu-he River, 157  
 Lu-jiang River, 593-4, 676, 682  
 Lujiang-wang, 40  
 Lükouwan, 683  
 Lulong, 58, 75–76, 130, 132, 330  
 Lulong-jun army, 130, 148, 156  
 Lumenshan, 618–20  
 Lun (Tibetan minister), 92–93, 101, 104, 110  
 Lun4zhou, 191–92, 196  
 Lunzhou, 126, 135, 189-90, 192  
 Luo Bao, 176  
 Luo Binwang, 45  
 Luo Fei, 645  
 Luo Fengxian, 57, 75, 97  
 Luo Hongxin, 125, 132  
 Luo Junwen, 583  
 Luo Liang, 534, 716-7  
 Luo Mi, 534,  
 Luo Shichang, 260  
 Luo Shihui, 285, 345, 555  
 Luo Shoulu, 593  
 Luo Shouzhong, 73  
 Luo Wujing and Luo Liangbi, 534  
 Luo Wuzheng, 70-71  
 Luo Xian, 536  
 Luo Xianglin, 115, 175, 188, 200, 207, 483, 491, 503  
 Luo Yan'gui, 223  
 Luo Yi, 37, 67  
 Luo Yin, 197  
 Luo Yuan'gao, 177  
 Luo Yue, 56,  
 Luo Zhenyue, 258, 271  
 Luo Zhouhan, 144  
 Luobidian, 678  
 Luo'eryuan, 285–86, 340, 356, 555  
 Luo-he River, 194, 467, 480, 530  
 Luokou, 33–34  
 Luoluosi, 516, 678  
 Luo-shi-gui-guo, 516, 595  
 Luoshigui-guo and Bolzhou campaign, 595  
 Luoyang, 30–35, 52–57, 63–65, 117, 128, 159-60, 464–65, 470, 474–76, 480, 570–72  
 Luoyi, 147, 154–55  
 Luo Zhou, 35, 37, 128  
 Lüqiu Xiao, 55

Luqu-he, 339, 417  
Luzhou, 583, 585–86, 593–96, 613, 636–38  
Luzhou and Taiyuan armies, 114  
Luzhou city, 638  
Ly dynasty, 225  
Ly dynasty emperor, 238

## M

Ma Bojian, 463  
Ma Chao, 10  
Ma Delin and Kong Jinn, 661  
Ma Fa, 646  
Ma Feng, 213  
Ma Fu, 343  
Ma Gai, 127  
Ma Gao and Ma You, 531  
Ma Gongru, 62  
Ma Guanghu, 187  
Ma Guangzu, 605  
Ma Heng and Yan Zhongfan, 662  
Ma Hua, 722  
Ma Ji, 645  
Ma Jianlong, 361, 456  
Ma Jing, 134  
Ma Jingru and Hua Hong, 134, 178  
Ma Kuo, 531  
Ma Lin, 97, 99  
Ma Qian, 602  
Ma Qingxiang, 355  
Ma Quanjie, 162  
Ma Renjie, 69  
Ma Renyu, 193, 223  
Ma Rong, 589  
Ma Rouji, 533  
Ma Shilong, 632  
Ma Shuang, 124  
Ma Song, 637  
Ma Sui and Hun Jian, 103  
Ma Tianji, 605  
Ma Wang, 677  
Ma Xi'e, 166, 187-8, 210  
Ma Xin4, 338  
Ma Xisheng, Ma Xifan, Ma Xiguang, Ma Xichong, 187  
Ma Xizhong, 539  
Ma Yan'gui, 154  
Ma Yin, 136-8, 175, 184-7, 190-2, 202, 208-10  
Ma Yong, 357, 470-1, 481  
Ma You, 644, 531  
Ma Yuan, 71, 74  
Ma Yun and Ye Wang, 723

Ma Zhi, 246-7, 255-6  
Ma Zheng, 302  
Ma Zhong, 249, 554, 562  
Ma Zhong and Ma Yi, 723  
Ma Chongying (Ma Zhongying), 97  
Ma Zuchang, 694  
Maan Cun, 177  
Ma'anzhai, 601  
mace-bludgeon, 69–72, 109–10, 117, 122  
Machi, 4  
Magas, 488–89  
Magog prisons, 507  
Mahmud Khan, 307, 426  
Mahmu-dyalavach, 430, 477–78, 506, 511  
Mahujiang, 593–94, 596, 616, 636-7  
Maimendisi-bu, 520  
Ma-jia (Hungary), 491  
Majiadu, 534  
Ma-jianlong, 361  
Malgal, 14–18, 67, 70-1, 291–92, 297–99, 367–68  
Malgal people, 15, 17, 24, 366, 368  
Ma-li, 434–35, 438  
Malingbu, 564–65  
Ma-lu, 345, 353, 434–35, 439–40  
Mamluks, 523  
Mancheng, 231–32, 344, 349, 361  
Manchu Qing Emperor Kangxi, 288  
Manchuria, 291–94, 299–300, 330–31, 365–69, 412–15, 417  
    northeastern, 2, 15, 152, 368  
    southeastern, 293–94, 297  
    southwestern, 8, 16, 298, 366  
Manchu rule, 664, 702  
Manchus, 8–9, 17–18, 291–92, 663, 665  
Mang-ge-la, 636  
Mangge-tiemu'er, 660, 687–88  
Manggudai, 609, 658  
Manggutai's Mongol, 683  
Mangqut, 342, 389, 396, 419  
Mangwu, 389, 419, 461, 560  
Mani, 693, 701  
Manichaeism, 693, 701  
Manichaeism rebellion, 246, 256  
Mantuo-cheng, 515  
Manzhou, 344, 421  
Mao Gui, 709  
Mao Jun, 626  
Mao Wenxi, 181  
Mao Xiang, 178  
Mao Zhang, 151  
Mao Ziyuan, 702  
Maoming, 646, 678

Maoniucheng city, 239  
 Maozhou, 93, 103, 514–15, 595–96, 598  
 Marco Polo, 525, 602, 612, 673  
 Marignolli, 698–99  
 massacre, 182–83, 364, 439–40, 444–45, 583, 643  
 massacre of Armenia Major, 451  
 Master Rogerius, 498–99  
 Master Sun-zi, 55  
 mausoleums, 275, 475, 531, 570, 633  
 Mayi, 12, 29, 37, 41  
 Mazandaran, 432, 435, 439–41, 446–47, 519–20  
 Mazandaran campaigns, 431–32, 434, 441  
 Ma-zha-er, 394, 404, 421  
 Mecca, 522  
 Mei2zhou, 579, 584, 616  
 Meimundiz, 520  
 Meizhou, 644–45  
 melee battles, 545, 601, 622  
 meles mouth, 322, 413  
 Menen-dutum, 373  
 Meng Chang, 158, 165, 168, 182  
 Meng Dao, 127  
 Meng Fangli, 118, 120–21, 124–27  
 Meng Gong, 513–14, 556, 562, 568–70, 573–77, 584–89  
 Meng Gong's Ningwu-jun Army, 602  
 Meng Haigong, 34  
 Meng Haima, 703-4  
 Meng Ji, 625  
 Meng Jia, 676  
 Meng Jincha, 31  
 Meng Jing, 585  
 Meng Kai, 122  
 Meng Qian, 127, 134  
 Meng Rang, 33–34  
 Meng Rang and Dou Jiande, 34  
 Meng Yan, 610  
 Meng Zhixiang, 127, 154, 157–58, 181–82  
 Meng Zongzheng's Zhongshun-jun, 562  
 Meng2gu3, 308–11, 316, 376, 379-80, 662  
 Meng2gu3-Jurchen wars, 380  
 Meng2gu3-ren people, 309  
 Meng2gu3si, 308, 316, 378, 380  
 Meng2gu3si people, 308, 316, 380  
 Meng2gu3 State, 310, 378  
 Meng-fu (Mengwu [Menggu] 'fu' {supporting [the Jurchens]}), 309, 379  
 Mengge, 482–83, 572  
 Meng-ge, 402  
 Menggu, 310–11, 313, 376, 379, 662  
 Meng-gu-bu-hua, 287, 356  
 Menggu expedition army, 311  
 Menggu-Jurchen conflicts, 310  
 Mengguo, 376  
 Menggu people, 310  
 Mengke, 483–85, 487–91, 509–12, 524–25, 597–602, 609–10  
 Mengke and Khubilai's bodyguard troops, 488  
 Mengke Khan, 446, 461, 484, 499, 505, 509–12, 517–18, 521–22, 524–25, 585, 589, 591–94, 597, 602–3, 606, 657, 669, 671, 681, 688–89  
 Mengke Khan's Death, 524  
 Mengke's death, 523, 602, 606  
 Mengke's death and Khubilai, 607  
 Mengke's succession of Guyuk's throne, 424  
 Mengke-temur, 687–88  
 Mengshe-zhao, 98, 180, 513  
 Meng-wa Tribe, 17, 67, 367  
 Mengwu, 309, 312, 316, 370, 372, 376–79, 384-5, 389, 391  
 Mengwu-Dadan barbarians, 8, 309, 379  
 Mengwu Mongols, 395  
 Mengwu people, 374, 377–78, 384, 392  
 Mengwu Shiwei, 15, 297, 308, 365–68, 371–72, 374–75  
 Mengzhou, 128, 354–55  
 Merkit and Naiman, 403, 407  
 Merkit chieftain Tuoheituo'a, 397–98, 404  
 Merkit generals, 418, 420  
 Merkit-Kipchak campaign, 428, 431  
 Merkits, 383–85, 387–90, 392–98, 420–21, 423, 425–26  
 Merkits and Kipchaks, 416, 418, 423, 428  
 Merkits and Naimans, 385, 389  
 Merv, 345, 430, 433–35, 439–41  
 Merv campaign, 440  
 Merv massacre, 434–35  
 Mi Xin, 232  
 Mi You, 625  
 Mi Zhicheng, 192,  
 Mi Zhicheng, 192  
 Mi4zhou, 330, 414, 533, 621  
 Mian2yang, 181, 583, 704–6, 708  
 Mian2zhou, 153, 157, 177–78, 181  
 Mian3yang, 566, 579, 581  
 Mian3zhou, 460–61, 554, 565–66, 578–81, 598  
 Mian3zhou battles, 579  
 Mian-shui River, 81, 259, 593  
 Mianzhou, 722  
 Miao Daolun, 337–38, 342, 352  
 Miao Fu, 249, 532–33  
 Miao Lü, 279  
 Miao Xianwu, 342  
 Miao Xiu, 465

Miao Xun, 169, 222  
 Miao Yu, 533  
 Miao Zaicheng, 640, 628  
 Miao people, 83  
 Miaochuan, 245, 267, 269, 278–79  
 Micang-shan Mountain, 590  
 Mieli-khan, 443  
 Mieszko II, 493–94  
 Migukou, 326, 413  
 Min-guo state, 193, 198–207, 209  
 Min-guo state and Chu-guo state, 198, 202  
 Min-jiang and Dadu-he rivers, 515  
 Min-jiang River, 82, 88, 117, 515, 588, 637  
 Min-wang, King, 201, 203, 205  
 Ming Chongyan, 45  
 Ming Sheng, 703, 714, 722  
 Ming Yuzhen, 703, 708–9  
 Ming dynasty, 296–97, 371–3, 653, 697–99, 702, 709–11, 724  
 Ming dynasty expedition army, 703, 720  
 Ming dynasty founding emperor Zhu Yuanzhang, 714  
 Ming dynasty treasure ships, 681  
 Ming Dynasty Emperor Taizu, 634  
 Ming Emperor Chengzu, 724  
 Ming Emperor Guangzong, 219  
 Ming Emperor Hongwu, 270  
 Ming Emperor Hongzhi, 270  
 Ming Emperor Huidi, 724  
 Ming Emperor Zhu Yuanzhang, 288, 653, 699, 720  
 Ming garrisons of Duoyan, 724  
*ming-jiao* (Manichaeism), 693, 701  
*Ming Shi*, 717–18  
 Mingchang, 386  
*minghan*, 309, 326, 335–36, 359–61, 405, 411–12  
 Minglihuozhe, 658  
 Mingxi, 714  
 Mingzhou, 120, 127, 129, 144, 149  
 Minkas, 488–90  
 Minshan, 88  
 Minusinsk, 369  
 Minzhou, 96, 243, 245, 275, 278  
*Miserabile Carmen*, 497  
 Mizhi, 260, 275–76  
 Mizhisila, 449  
 Mizhi-xian, 261, 272  
 Mizhou, 135, 336–37, 343, 346  
 Mo Jian, 556  
 Mo-dawang-lu of southwestern China, 517  
 Mochuo Khan, 47–48, 50, 95, 299  
 Moge, 509, 597, 598, 600  
 Mo-gu-si rebellion, 312  
 Mohe, 8, 18, 67, 291–92, 296–99  
 Mohe Khan, 27  
 Mohe auxiliary army, 298  
 Mohecheng city, 107  
 Mohe people, 297–98  
 Mohi, 495, 498, 500–501  
 Mo-hui people, 294  
 Moldavia (Moldova), 484, 497, 688, 690  
 Moldovan people, 484  
 Molghar's Mongol, 437  
 Moli, 536  
 Moli-jun, 106,  
 Moma, 331, 334  
 monasteries, 62, 198, 201, 350, 711  
 Mongol ancestors, 17, 313–4, 367, 376  
 Mongol ancestress Alan-ko, 370, 387  
 Mongol and Han-ethnic armies, 623  
 Mongol and Jurchen troops, 673  
 Mongol and Soong armies, 569  
 Mongol and Tungusic tribes, 365  
 Mongol army, 459–66, 468–70, 472–76, 478–81, 569–73, 582–86  
     chased Batu's, 500  
     defeated Hudu-tiemu'er's, 679  
     defeated Subetei's, 460  
     defeated Whang Dechen's, 588  
     encountering Subetei's, 467  
     ethnic-Han, 635, 661  
     intercepting Niu-lin's, 596  
     left-wing, 478  
     middle, 581  
     middle route, 573  
     prong, 603  
     repelled Whang Shixian's, 585  
     right route, 330  
     strong, 470, 481  
     turncoat, 627  
     western prong, 595  
 Mongol army attacking Sichuan, 598  
 Mongol army frequenting Urgenchi, 436  
 Mongol army in Hungary, 495  
 Mongol army in Runan, 468  
 Mongol army in Sichuan, 620  
 Mongol army in western Xiangyang, 621  
 Mongol army on mount Baofengshan, 592  
 Mongol army in Vladimir, 485  
 Mongol army retreat to Pingjiang and Jiaxing, 633  
 Mongol army's siege on Mount Ma'an-shan, 602  
 Mongol attack of Chengdu, 584  
 Mongol attack of Chengdu and Jia-ding, 589  
 Mongol attack on Poland, 491

- Mongol attacks, 318, 407, 473, 486–87, 585–86, 604, 628–29
- Mongol *basqaqi*, 430
- Mongol biography on Xiang-wu-su, 641
- Mongol Campaigns, 335, 416, 419, 422–23, 425, 458, 594, 614–15, 623, 635, 644, 594
- Mongol Second Campaign to the West, 414
- Mongol Second-Stage Campaign against the Jurchens, 327
- Mongols' First-Stage Campaign against the Jurchens, 318
- Mongol Third Western Campaign, 519
- Mongol campaign against Mo-dawang-lu (Banditry King Mo-dawang's circuit) of Nandan-zhou, 517
- Mongol Central Asia campaigns, 363, 416, 423–4, 442, 444, 490
- Mongol conquest of southern China, 674
- Mongol cannons, 434, 466, 480
- Mongol-Champa War, 677
- Mongol-Chinese alliance, 474, 481
- Mongol-Christian alliance, 507
- Mongol clansmen, 377
- Mongol conquest, 486, 489, 513, 516, 650–53
- Mongol conquest history, 430
- Mongol conquest of Burma, 677
- Mongol conquest of Southern Soong, 715
- Mongol Crown Prince Zhenjin, 685
- Mongol debacle, 579
- Mongol debacle in attacking Gui'de, 469
- Mongol defeat, 444
- Mongol defeat in Japan, 644, 675
- Mongol-designated Syriac church monk, 452
- Mongol emissaries, 345, 426–27, 593, 671–72, 675–77, 679–80
- bullied, 686
- killed, 480
- prior, 672
- Mongol emissaries Hao Jing, 609
- Mongol emissary Ge-bu-han, 559
- Mongol emissary Hao Jing, 624
- Mongol emissary Qie-lie, 680
- Mongol emissary's killing by Khwarazm, 422
- Mongol emissary's stealing gold cup, 458, 466
- Mongol emissary Su-bu-han, 460, 564, 566
- Mongol emissary Tang Qing, 468
- Mongol emissary Wang Ji, 575
- Mongol emissary Zhe-gu-yu, 669
- Mongol emperors, 371, 608, 670, 677, 693, 696–7
- Mongol Emperor Chengzong, 685
- Mongol Emperor Dingzong, 458, 478
- Mongol Emperor Dingzong & Xianzong, 670
- Mongol Emperor Renzong, 478
- Mongol Emperor Ruizong, 463
- Mongol emperor's amnesty decrees, 637
- Mongol emperor's decree of no-random-killing, 611
- Mongol Emperor Taizong, 574, 687
- Mongol Empire, 603, 698, 724
- Mongol empress, 598
- Mongol entourage, 635, 640, 669
- Mongol excursion, 492–93, 594
- Mongol expedition, 285, 419, 422, 428, 450, 483, 673, 675
- Mongol fleet, 625, 627, 646–47, 673, 683–84
- Mongol General A-han, 643
- Mongol General Anchen-nayan, 412
- Mongol General Alahan, 642
- Mongol General A-li-hai-ya, 678
- Mongol General Anzhijidai, 432, 440, 445
- Mongol General An-zhu-er, 456
- Mongol General A-zhu, 620, 623–24, 630
- Mongol General A-zhu-lu, 472
- Mongol General Bayan, 217
- Mongol General Bei-li-hai, 349, 359, 453, 560
- Mongol General Bo-yan, 623
- Mongol General Boyan-tiemu'er, 722
- Mongol General Boyawutai-heshang, 625
- Mongol General Cha-han, 342, 419, 444
- Mongol General Che-chen-ba-tu-er, 604
- Mongol General Chepe, 374
- Mongol General Chizhan-hechongshan, 454
- Mongol General Dalibuhan, 678
- Mongol General Dashi-badulu, 705
- Mongol General Dong Wenbing, 592, 634, 643
- Mongol General Dong Wenwei, 591
- Mongol General Duo'erbo-duoheishen, 446
- Mongol General Gao-nao-er, 627
- Mongol General Heladai, 646
- Mongol General Hudu-timu'er, 454
- Mongol General Huluhan-zhichengqian, 465
- Mongol General Jiagu-longgu, 589
- Mongol General Jia Wenbei, 623
- Mongol General Jiu-zhu, 614
- Mongol General Liang Ying, 583
- Mongol General Liang Zaili, 591
- Mongol General Li Cha'er, 709, 713
- Mongol General Li Gaoe, 610
- Mongol General Li Heng, 619, 646
- Mongol General Li-hulaqi, 599
- Mongol General Li Ting, 619
- Mongol General Liu Guojie, 619
- Mongol General Liu Zili, 647
- Mongol General Nai-er-buhua, 722
- Mongol General Niu-lin, 601, 613, 636

- Mongol General Qiedi-buhua, 519  
Mongol General Shiji-Huduhu, 443  
Mongol General Shi Quan, 591, 619  
Mongol General Shi Quan2, 619  
Mongol General Shi Shu, 645  
Mongol General Bei-da-ke, 496  
Mongol General Qielie-suge, 593  
Mongol General Sajisibuhua, 469  
Mongol General Shi Tianze, 468, 480  
Mongol General Suo-du, 644–45  
Mongol General Yelü Tuhua, 614  
Mongol General Yesudai'er, 620  
Mongol General Zhang Honglüe, 344, 421, 569  
Mongol General Ta-cha-er, 474  
Mongol General Ta-chu, 623, 645  
Mongol General Ta-hai, 584, 628  
Mongol General Taimas, 451  
Mongol General Taimasi-taina'er, 432  
Mongol General Ta-si, 359  
Mongol General Taymas, 451  
Mongol General Wang-baobao, 722  
Mongol General Wochen, 456  
Mongol General Wulan-heda, 516, 593  
Mongol General Wu-ma-er, 684  
Mongol General Xiao-nai-tai, 461, 561  
Mongol General Xilihan, 641  
Mongol General Xin-du, 673  
Mongol General Yang Wen'an, 639  
Mongol General Yao-zhu, 703  
Mongol General Yesu-da'er, 639  
Mongol General Ye-zhi-li, 624  
Mongol General Zhang Hongfan, 620, 646, 648, 668  
Mongol General Zhang Rou, 574, 618  
Mongol General Zhao Bi, 618  
Mongol General Zhao Xiala, 597  
Mongol General Zhen-hai, 321  
Mongol generals, 576, 604, 606, 609–10, 613, 615, 684  
Mongol generals A-ta-chi and Yelie-badu'er, 635  
Mongol generals Li Mubo and Wang Fu, 616  
Mongol generals Li Yi and Zhang Haogu, 610  
Mongol generals Sai-dian-chi and Zheng Ding, 635  
Mongol generals Suo-du and Wu-ma-er, 682  
Mongol generals Zhang Hongfan and Li Ting, 620  
Mongol generals Zhang Tingrui and Jiao Deyu, 615  
Mongol governor Yan Zhongfan, 636  
Mongol history, 363, 371, 373, 496  
    official, 673  
    prevalent, 636  
Mongol history annals, 358, 410, 442, 615  
Mongol history records, 419  
Mongol history scholar and translator Yu Dajun, 373  
Mongol homeland, 507, 607  
Mongolia, 96, 305–7, 330, 386–88, 391–93, 416–19, 443, 483, 503–5, 520, 523–24  
    central, 307, 314, 378, 384  
    west, 95  
Mongolia-Manchuria, 2, 42, 383  
Mongol Ilkhanate, 504  
Mongol II-khans of Persia, 363  
Mongol internal strife, 687  
Mongol internecine, 693  
Mongol invasion, 437, 440, 446, 496–97, 504, 513–14, 517, 565, 583–84, 588, 593, 639, 652, 670–72  
Mongol invasion of Da'an, 566  
Mongol Invasion of Hungary, 498, 501  
Mongol invasion of Jurchen Jin, 349  
Mongol Invasion of Koryo, 669  
Mongol invasion of Moravia, 491, 497  
Mongol invasion of Poland, 493, 688  
Mongol khanates, 506, 612, 687  
Mongol khans, 478, 483, 514, 660, 663  
Mongol Khan Tegus-temur, 724  
Mongol kings, 500, 509, 657, 677, 684, 690  
Mongol King Anxi-wang, 636  
Mongol King Buhua, 676  
Mongol King Kouwen-buhua, 574  
Mongol King Liang-wang Basalawarmi, 722  
Mongol King Liao-wang A-zha-shi-li, 724  
Mongol King Lu-wang, 709  
Mongol King Muhuali, 424  
Mongol King Tu-mu-le-hu-ba-tu-er, 720  
Mongol King Weishun-wang Kuancheputhua, 703  
Mongol King Xiping-wang, 678  
Mongol King Yunnan-wang, 677, 680  
Mongol King Zhennan-wang, 681–82  
Mongol language, 292, 300, 377, 509  
Mongol legends, 370, 381, 387–88, 457  
Mongol logistics minister Tian Zhen-hai, 443  
Mongol magistrate Wang Shiyang, 636  
Mongol marshal Anzhu'er, 584  
Mongol marshal A-zhu-lu, 472, 562  
Mongol marshals Da-er-jue and An-cha-er, 354  
Mongol massacre, 326, 524, 583, 586  
Mongol mercenary Alans, 635  
Mongol mercenary armies, 447, 450, 505  
Mongol merchants, 345, 423, 426–27  
Mongol minister Li Tan3, 361, 561  
Mongol minister Liu Bingzhong, 349, 424  
Mongol Pingyang-jun Army, 588  
Mongol policy of tolerance for religions, 692  
Mongol princes, 497, 580–81, 681, 684, 692  
Mongol prince A-tai, 683

Mongol prince Bei-dai-er, 496  
 Mongol prince Kuo-chu, 572  
 Mongol prince Kuo-duan, 357  
 Mongol prince Wulianghetai, 499  
 Mongol prison in Peking, 606  
 Mongol pyrrhic victory, 451  
 Mongol Qingle-jun, 335  
 Mongol rebel prefectural king Weining-jun-wang  
     Tuo-hu-chi, 695  
 Mongol river blockade, 435  
 Mongol rule in coastal China of Fujian and  
     Guangdong, 648  
 Mongol ruler Na-ha-chu, 723  
 Mongol script, 515, 663, 693  
 Mongols, 312–35, 337–81, 402–22, 424–507, 558–  
     649, 666–87  
     arrested, 575–76  
     attacked, 355, 359, 615  
     barbaric, 228  
     brutal, 651  
     defeated, 356, 441  
     defeated Jochi's, 428  
     early, 316  
     ethnic-Han, 326, 584  
     first, 431  
     first shah-chasing, 437  
     five, 343, 350, 558, 560–61  
     followed, 616, 636–37  
     history of the, 395  
     induced, 604  
     instructed, 661  
     left, 351  
     old, 509, 612, 687, 694  
     pincer-attack Kuo-duan's, 581  
     purported, 486  
     remnant, 460, 724  
     requested withe, 451  
     rescued, 569  
     southern, 497, 606  
     stranded, 526, 608  
     subordinate ethnic-Khitan, 507  
     tailgating, 465  
     veteran, 507  
     word, 376  
 Mongol sagas, 371  
 Mongol Samoyeds, 399  
 Mongol-Tayichi`uts, 377  
 Mongol-Tangut, 422  
 Mongol-Tangut armies, 284, 320  
 Mongol-Tangut force, 285  
 Mongol Tanguts, 613, 664  
 Mongol tribes, 303, 383, 391, 437  
 Mongol *tumen*, 684  
 Mongol yoke, 217, 227, 256  
 Mongol Yuan, 378–79, 697–99, 705–11, 713–14,  
     716, 718  
 Mongol Yuan Emperor Chengzong, 678, 685–86  
 Mongol Yuan Emperor Shundi, 635  
 Mongol Yuan General Chahan-tiemu'er, 709  
 Mongol Yuan General Dashi-tiemu'er, 705, 707  
 Mongol Yunnan-wang King, 679  
 Mongols and Central-Eastern Europe, 492, 498  
 Mongols and collaborators, 648  
 Mongols and defeated Mongol General  
     Tekechuk, 441  
 Mongols and Geshilie-elun, 468  
 Mongols and Jurchen Jin, 381, 463  
 Mongols and Koryo, 417  
 Mongols and Polish, 493  
 Mongols and Soong Chinese, 279, 280, 476, 577  
 Mongols and Southern Soong, 571, 575  
 Mongols and Tanguts, 282, 422  
 Mongols and Zhu Jin, 133  
 Mongols' attacking Baideng, 410  
 Mongols' attacking He-nan, 564  
 Mongols' attacking Pereyaslavl and Chernigov, 489  
 Mongols' attacking Sichuan, 603, 617  
 Mongols' attacking Yingtian, 710  
 Mongol's campaign history in Central Asia, 440  
 Mongols' defeating Kuchlug, 415  
 Mongols' defeating rebel Pei Zhongsun, 671  
 Mongols' discrimination, 701  
 Mongols' disunity, 602  
 Mongols' European Expedition Army, 585  
 Mongols' feud Yilahe, 454  
 Mongols' feud Yilahe-xiangkun, 562  
 Mongols attacking Naiman chieftain Kuchlug, 387  
 Mongols attacking Zhu Yuanzhang, 713  
 Mongols conquering and ruling Koryo, 418, 477–  
     78, 671  
 Mongols invading Europe, 506  
 Mongols invading Jiaozhi, 517  
 Mongols invading Dali, 514  
 Mongols invading Annam, 676  
 Mongols invading Khwarazm, 445  
 Mongols' killing Duan Degong, 722  
 Mongols' killing Hong Fu and massacre, 635  
 Mongols' massacre of Ghazni and Herat, 444  
 Mongol-Soong Battle, last, 630  
 Mongols' prohibition, 390, 660  
 Mongols' sacking Fulzhou, 638  
 Mongols' sacking Kostroma, 486  
 Mongols' sacking Suining and Luzhou, 585  
 Mongols' siege of Dongping, 351



- Mongols' Siege of Fengxiang, 467  
 Mongols' siege of Xiangyang, 617, 674  
 Mongols' siege of Zhongdu, 553  
 Mongols' Weapon Prohibition Order, 648  
 Mongols' sparing Bukhara, 478  
 Mongols' Tiehwo-pao artilleries, 590  
 Mongol water-borne-army  
     Niu-lin's water-borne army, 600  
     Qielie-Suge's water-borne army, 637-8  
     Shimo Bulao's water-borne army, 637  
 monkhood, 513  
 monk plateau (Heshangyuan), 318, 535, 550, 552  
 monks, 62, 101-2, 264-65, 350, 710  
 Monolun's sons, 373, 419  
 Montecorvino, 688, 692, 698  
 Moqi Xie, 543  
 Moravia, 491, 494-97, 501  
 Moravian Gate, 496  
 Moravian River of Theben, 502  
 Mordovians, 483, 486  
 Moscow, 485-87, 490  
 Moskva River, 485  
 Mo-so, 80  
 Mosul troops, 447  
*moumuke*, 326, 336, 344, 405  
 mountain forts, 95, 354, 432, 501, 435, 587-88  
 mountain palisades, 465, 531, 568, 593  
 mountain pass, 161, 321, 338, 396, 406, 499  
 Mount Cuipingshan, 319, 321, 323, 410-11  
 Mount Ma'an-shan, 525, 602  
 Mount Maowendu'er battle, 396  
 Mount Tiandushan, 245, 277-78  
 Mount Wagang, 32-33  
 Mount Yinshan Da-da2 people, 305  
 Mount Yu-shan, 462, 567  
 Moyanxia valley, 277  
 Moyejie, 51  
 Mo-zang E-pang, 241, 273  
 Mozhou, 57, 169, 174, 234  
 Mstislav, 447, 449-50, 485  
 Mstislav III of Kiev, 449  
 Mu Ying, 680, 711, 722  
 'mu-yi (recruitment and service) *fa*' laws, 244  
*Mu-tian-zi Zhuan*, 5, 258, 369, 454  
 Mu-zheng, 275  
 Mu-zong, 300  
 Muzhou, 117, 190  
 Mucheng (log city of Champa), 680-1  
 Muchu Khan, 25-28  
 Mukan/Muqan, 25-26  
 Mugui, 88  
 Muhuali, 286-87, 342-44, 348-49, 351-57, 414-17, 424  
     conferred, 342, 419, 424  
     death of, 358, 453, 560  
     defeated, 287, 356  
     followed, 330, 339, 351, 358  
 Muhuali's grandson, 359, 572  
 Muhuali's Mongols, 332, 343, 349-50, 356  
 Mukry, 434-35, 438  
 Mulahida (Arsacia), 506, 519  
 Mulian-yi postal relay (Guan-shan summer camp), 460  
 Muliyan, 88  
 Multan, 445, 521  
 Munaixi, 354, 506, 511, 519-21  
 Muqali, 343, 397, 401, 405, 424  
 Murong, 8, 13-14, 297, 366  
 Murong Huang, 8  
 Murong Jiabin, 72  
 Murong Nuohebo, 89-91  
 Murong Wei, 535  
 Murong Yanchao, 165-67  
 Murong Yanzhao, 183, 188, 220, 224  
 Muslim army, 307, 415, 417, 717  
 Muslim city statelets, 439  
 Muslim rebellion, 519  
 Muslims, 426, 579-80, 612-13, 664, 711, 715  
 Musta'sim (Al-Musta'sim), 469, 521-22  
 Mustaxin, 521-22  
 mutineers, 118, 125, 148, 155  
 mutiny, 154, 203-4, 206-7, 314, 350-52, 354  
 myth, 83, 110, 313, 364, 440-41, 505  
  
**N**  
 Nachin-ba'atur, 373-74, 419  
 Na-ha-chu, 723  
 Na-hai, 688-89, 690  
 Nahe-maizhu, 286, 340, 555  
 Naiman and Tangwute, 613, 664  
 Naiman-qi, 78  
 Naimans, 383, 385-86, 389-90, 392-99, 403-4, 407  
 Naimans and Merkits, 394, 398  
 Naimans Tayang-khan, 390, 403  
 Naiman territories, 612, 687  
 Naiman troops, 393, 397, 403, 407  
 Nakuz people, 388  
 Nan Guanghai, 182  
 Nan Jiyun, 55  
 Nan Qing, 592  
 Nan Yongzhong, 593  
 Nanchang, 194, 629-30, 704, 708, 713

Nanchong, 157, 582–83, 587, 597, 599  
 Nandumen, 350, 557  
 Nanghai-wang, King, 209  
 Nan-jiang (south river) southern barbarians, 243, 517  
 Nanjianzhou, 642, 645  
 Nan-jing, 231–32, 235, 256, 280, 302–4, 465–66  
 Nanjing city, 361  
 Nankang-jun-wang, King, 184  
 Nanking, 188–89, 194–95, 225, 710–13, 717–20  
 Nanping, 183, 204, 642, 645, 714  
 Nanping-jun, 596, 639  
 Nanping-wang, King, 184, 186, 208  
 Nan-tang, 175, 192–93  
 Nanyang basin and Han-shui River, 53  
 Nanyang, 75  
*nan-yuan*, 159, 255, 271, 301  
 Nanzhao, 57, 63, 74, 81, 98–99, 103–5, 110–11, 115–17, 178, 513, 580  
 Nanzhao campaign in southwestern China, 611  
 Nanzhao capital city of Taihe-cheng, 74  
 Nanzhao Emperor Longshun, 119  
 Nanzhao kingdom, 71, 74, 98, 103–5, 99, 105, 110–11, 580  
 Nanzhao King Ge-luo-feng, 71, 103, 111  
 Nanzhao King Yi-mou-xun, 103  
 Nanzhao royal name of Meng-cuodian, 104  
 Nanzhao-Tang relationship, 104, 111  
 Nanzhao-Tang wars, 63  
 Nanzhao-Tibetan wars, 111  
 Nao-hu, 510  
 Naozhou, 646  
 Na-sa, 433, 437  
 Nasulading, 678–79  
 Na-wu-na, 716  
 Nayacu, 723  
 Nayan, 690  
 Na-zhen, 373  
 Necelai, 724  
 Neihuang, 125  
 Nepalese army, 90  
 Neyshabur, 431–35, 437, 439–41, 520  
 Ngo Quyen, 209–10  
 Nijue-chuluo Khan, 28  
 Nine-name Tiele, 110  
 Nine-surname Da-da<sup>2</sup> people, 400  
 Nine-surname Oghuz, 400  
 Nine-surname Oghuz people, 392  
 Ningchen, 332, 415  
 Ningcheng, 78, 315, 330, 335  
 Ningguo-jun garrison city, 135  
 Ninghua, 324, 714  
 Ningling, 55  
 Ningqiang, 179, 566, 578, 582  
 Ningwu-jun army, 577  
 Ningxia, 236–37, 240, 269, 271–73, 283, 454–55  
 Ningzhou, 42, 169, 174, 261, 268, 320  
 Nisa/Nesa, 433–34, 437  
 Nisa-Neyshabur wars, 434  
 Nishabu'er, 437  
 Niu Fu, 622, 667  
 Niu Gao, 536, 538–39, 541  
 Niu Jinda, 90  
 Niu-lin, 591, 596–99, 600, 705  
 Niu Sengru, 60–61  
 Nogai, 688–90  
 nomads, 66–67, 364, 366–67, 370, 377–78, 391  
 Nong Quanfu, 238  
 Nong Shigui, 625  
 Nong Xiaqing, 238  
 Nong Zhigao, 238  
 Nonni River, 312  
 North Africa, 511, 522, 525  
 North Asia, 9, 82, 292  
 Northeastern Yellow River Bend, 312, 319, 320, 325, 330  
 Northern Bei-suo rebels, 705  
 northern expedition, 347–48, 538–39, 547, 614–15, 718–20, 722–24  
 Northern Huns, 9–10, 83  
 northern Italy, 502  
 northern Manchuria, 274, 311, 380, 724  
 northern Mongolia, 267, 392, 404, 516, 594, 682, 722  
 northern Mongolia-Manchuria, 721  
 Northern Qi, 15, 21–22, 25–27  
 Northern Rus Principalities, 484  
 Northern Soong, 173–74, 215, 217, 227–28, 248, 257, 570–71  
 Northern Soong Emperor Huizong, 218, 702  
 Northern Tuoba Wei Emperor Taiwudi and Tang Emperor Wuzong, 167  
 northern Xing'an Ridge, 15, 297, 366  
 Northern Yellow River Bend, 4–5, 7, 260, 320  
 Northern Zhou, 15, 22–23, 25–26, 217–18, 225  
 Northern Zhou and Northern Qi, 26  
 Northern Zhou Emperor Jingdi, 23  
 Northern Zhou Emperor Wudi, 22, 25–26  
 Northern Zhou Emperor Xuandi, 22–23  
 northern Zu-bu, 313  
 Northern Yuan, 698  
 North Fuyu, 297  
 Northwestern Yellow River Bend, 406  
 North Yellow River Bend, 4, 6, 86, 357  
 Novgorod, 485–87, 490  
*noyan*, 307, 401, 451–52, 460, 480, 519–21

Nu'ergan, 724  
Nushibi tribes, 42, 44, 107–8  
Nusrat Kush, 436, 439–41  
Nüzhen, 18, 291–92, 296–98  
Nüzhi, 18, 291–92, 296–98  
Nuzhou, 169, 222

## O

Ogedei (Ogodai/ Ogo dei), 319–20, 325–26, 329, 356, 402, 412, 414, 428, 435–36, 439, 457–60, 464–67, 477–83, 509–10, 562–3, 610, 687, 693  
Ogedei and Chagatai khanates struck peace, 690  
Ogedei Khan, 351, 359, 371, 391, 446, 451, 453, 459–60, 462–63, 472, 477–79, 488–89, 503, 506–7, 510, 519, 572, 579, 582, 657–58, 660, 662, 669, 679, 694–95, 709  
Ogedei Khanate, 612, 687, 690, 693  
Ogedei Khan's Campaign, 459, 572  
Ogedei's brother Kuo-lie-jian, 483  
Ogedei's death, 446, 503–4, 577, 588  
Ogedei's descendants, 482–83, 687–88, 691  
Oghulgamish, 506–10  
Oirats, 377, 386–87, 389–90, 393–94, 403, 503, 510, 724  
Oka River, 485, 490  
Okin-barak, 384–85  
Olberlik, 447, 483–84  
Old Chinese, 82, 291–92, 367  
old name of Wuji, 18, 297  
Old Tibetan Chronicle (*Tubo Da-shi4 Ji Nian*), part of *The Dunhuang Manuscripts*, 90–91  
Olmütz, 496  
Olomouc, 496–97, 502  
Oljeitu, 688  
Olt River, 498–99  
Omar, 683–84  
ombudsman, 67–69, 73, 516–17, 548–49, 610–11, 679–80  
Onggirat & Genghis Khan's Wife, 387  
Onggirat cavalymen, 315  
Onggirats, 311–16, 370–72, 377, 380–83, 385–87, 389  
Ongud, 390, 393, 396, 399, 419  
Onguts, 9, 368, 396, 399, 412  
Onni River, 312, 381  
Onon, 308, 380, 385, 387, 389–90, 392, 394, 396, 398  
Opole, 494, 496  
Opole-Racibórz, 493–94  
Oradea, 497, 499, 501  
Orchon Turks, 47, 299

Orda, 483, 486, 491–96  
Orda attacking Lun-xi-si-ke (Leczyca), 493, 494  
Ordja River, 314  
Ordukent, 418, 425, 428, 431–32  
Orkhon River, 25, 48, 376, 392, 394, 396, 398  
Orkhon river basins, 28  
Orkhon Turks, 47–48, 51, 95, 365  
Otmuchow, 496  
Otuz-Tatar, 66, 312, 375  
Ouyang Si, 184, 187  
Ouyang Xiu, 15, 67, 237–38, 242  
Ouyang Xun and Pei Ju, 24  
Oxus River, 510, 612, 687  
Oyrat, 344–45, 423, 426–30, 435  
governor of Oyrat, 344–45, 423, 426–27

## P

Paekche, 48–49, 291, 293, 296, 675  
pagoda, 198, 201, 254, 701  
paleo-North-Asia people, 369  
paleo-North-Asia type people, 1  
paleo-North-China, 21, 81  
Palhae, 273, 292, 298, 380  
palisades, 150, 244–45, 275–77, 555–57, 585, 714–15  
Pamirs, 80, 84, 429, 435, 439  
Pan Cheng, 709  
Pan Fu, 565, 672  
Pan Mei, 195, 222, 225, 232  
Pan Shikui and Wu Xingzhen, 204  
Pan Shusi, 188  
Pan You, 194–5  
Pan Zhang, 565  
Pan Zhu, 514  
Pang Fucheng, 158  
Pang Ji, 238  
Pang Juzhao, 208  
Pang Shigu, 127, 130–31, 133  
Pang Shigu and Ge Congzhou, 133, 189  
Pang Xun, 63–4, 105, 110–13, 115, 118  
Pang Xun Rebellion, 110–12  
Panluozhi, 163, 236, 264–65  
Parhae (Palhae), 18, 71, 291, 297–98  
passes, 169–70, 324, 328, 460–62, 565–66, 581–84  
cypress, 714–15  
fishing, 565–66, 592–93, 598  
peace accord, 274, 281, 537, 540, 543, 547–48  
peace agreement, 231, 287, 529, 540  
peace treaty, 38, 377–79, 407, 409  
Pei Che, 124  
Pei Du, 60–1  
Pei Ji, 36, 236, 264

Pei Ju, 24, 29, 37  
 Pei Kuan, 73  
 Pei Renji, 33–35, 92  
 Pei Shen, 118  
 Pei Shu, 137  
 Pei Wo, 112  
 Pei Xingjian, 47, 92  
 Pei Xingyan, 92  
 Pei Yan, 45  
 Pei Yu, 203  
 Pei Yue, 150  
 Pei Zhongsun, 671  
 Pei Zhouxian, 73  
 Peking, 237, 246–48, 254, 280, 303–4, 331–32, 337–39, 634–35  
 Peng Da and Zhao Junyong, 703, 711–2  
 Peng Daya, 309–10, 379, 585  
 Peng Gan, 187  
 Peng Shi'an, 638  
 Peng Tianxiang, 620, 636  
 Peng Weicheng, 557  
 Peng Yanzhang, 191, 198–99  
 Peng Yibin, 323, 338, 348, 353–54, 358–59, 558–61  
 Peng Yibin and Li Quan, 358, 560  
 Peng Yibin's northern expedition, 560–1  
 Peng Yingyu, 704, 706  
 Peng You and Li Maan, 536  
 Pengcheng city, 55  
 Pengxi-zhai fort, 615–16  
 Pengzhou, 177, 181, 183, 598–99  
 Pereg, 497–99, 501  
 Pereslavl-Zalessky, 486, 488–90  
 Peroz, 92  
 Persia, 26, 47, 92, 450–51  
 Pest, 489, 497, 499, 500–501  
 Phagsba, 663  
 phases of Kipchak campaigns, 427  
 piled-up rocks (jishi), 1, 258, 281, 455–56  
 Pi-le-ke, 498  
 Pingcheng, 7, 320, 411  
 Pingjiang, 533–34, 628–9, 631–33, 707  
 Pingliang-cheng, 600  
 Pinglu campaign, 135  
 Pinglu-jun, 52, 119–20, 131  
 Pingxiacheng, 245, 277  
 Ping-xia Tribe, 260–61  
 Pingxi-jun, 286, 355–56, 555  
 Pingyang, 338, 340, 343–44, 354–55, 661–62  
 Pingyuan, 32, 52, 351, 358, 560  
 Pingzhou, 67, 247–48, 256, 303–4, 325, 330, 332–33  
 Pi-shi-jun army, 17, 67, 368  
 Po'hai, 14, 18, 71, 298–99  
 Poland, 490–95, 500–501, 504, 510, 688–89  
 Polaniec, 492–93  
 Polish, 490–1, 493–95  
 Polish General Vladimir, 493  
 Pongju, 669  
 pontoon bridges, 150, 179–80, 185–86, 564, 597, 599–601  
 pope, 452, 502, 504, 506, 688  
 Posterior Chagatai, 695  
 Posterior Eastern Turkic Khanate, 48  
 Posterior Emperor Mindi, 158, 171, 262  
 Posterior Jinn Emperor Shi Chonggui, 206  
 Posterior Jinn, 106, 152–54, 160–64, 170, 172–73, 193, 199, 207, 211, 262, 273, 367  
 Posterior Jinn Emperor Chudi, 163, 172  
 Posterior Jurchens, 292  
 Posterior/Latter Shu, 225  
 Posterior Liang, 116, 138, 141–53, 152–3, 170–71, 179, 185, 192, 217, 261  
 Posterior Liang and Former Shu, 181  
 Posterior Liang and Jie-Yan armies, 144  
 Posterior Liang and Liu Shouguang's Jie-Yan, 144  
 Posterior Liang and Posterior Zhou, 106, 170, 217  
 Posterior Liang Emperor Modi, 148–49  
 Posterior Liang Emperor Taizu, 143, 171, 261  
 Posterior Liang Emperor Zhu Wen, 141, 145, 183, 201  
 Posterior Liang Emperor Zhu Zhen1, 192, 198  
 Posterior Liang General Wang Yanzhang, 149  
 Posterior Liang's Longxiang Army, 145  
 Posterior Liao, 669  
 Posterior Paekche, 197  
 Posterior Qin, 83, 87  
 Posterior Shu, 182, 186, 188  
 Posterior Shu-guo, 127  
 Posterior Tang, 147–48, 150, 152–53, 159–62, 170–72, 186–87, 199, 220, 217, 262  
 Posterior Tang Emperor Li Siyuan, 146  
 Posterior Tang Emperor Mingzong, 153, 155, 162, 171, 261–62  
 Posterior Tang Emperor Modi, 153, 159, 171, 262  
 Posterior Tang Emperor Zhuangzong, 141, 143, 148, 151–53, 171, 182, 369  
 Posterior Yan, 8  
 Posterior Zhou, 166–70, 173–75, 182, 186–88, 194, 210–11, 219–22  
 Posterior Zhou Dynasty Emperor Taizu, 166, 173, 262  
 Posterior Zhou Emperor Chai Rong, 210–11  
 Posterior Zhou Emperor Gongdi, 169, 174, 222  
 Posterior Zhou Emperor Shizong, 158, 168–9, 174, 220–21, 466

Poyangkou, 705  
 Pozsony, 501  
 prefectural kings, 56, 100, 191–92, 234, 473, 561  
 Prester John, 246–47, 256, 280, 303  
 prime ministers  
     Bayan, 686  
     Bolad, 363, 371, 373, 659  
     Cheng Yuanfeng, 595, 597  
     Ding Daquan, 597, 603  
     Gao Lianghui, right-side, 456, 511  
     Gao Taixiang, 515  
     Haan Tuo Zhou, 317, 408, 549  
     Jia Sidao, 525, 607  
     Ludongzan, 90, 93  
     Lu Xie, 113, 117, 124  
     Lu Xiufu, 218–19  
     Niu Sengru, 61, 76, 101  
     Chen Yizhong, 630–31, 640, 668  
     Shi Miyuan, 616  
     Soong Shenxi, 61  
     Tang Situi, 548  
     Toktoghan, 291, 329, 701  
     Tuo-tuo, 8, 378  
     Wang Duo, 112, 116, 118, 120–21, 125  
     Wang Duo to Jiangling, 116  
     Wang Lun, 540  
     Wanyan Fuxing, 331, 415  
     Wanyan Saibu, 468, 563  
     Wanyan Xiang, 307, 321, 386, 411  
     Wanyan Zhongde, 475, 568  
     Wo-daochong, 287, 454  
     Yang Guozhong, 53, 103  
     Ye-su's army, 718  
     Yuan-zai, 97  
     Zhang Rui, 128–29  
     Zhao Pu, 228–29  
     Zheng Qingzhi, 571, 573  
 Princess Anle, 48–49  
 Princess Donghua, 72–73  
 Princess Jincheng, 97  
 Princess Jincheng's Tangmuyi, 93  
 Princess Qianjin, 22–23, 26–27  
 Princess Taihe, 400  
 Princess Taiping, 49–50  
 Princess Yicheng, 28–29, 37  
 Princess Yicheng's brother Yang Sanjing, 37  
 Prince Wanyan Shouzhong, 332, 415  
 Pronsk, 484–85  
 prophecy, 30, 648–49  
 propitious animals, 446  
 proto-Finno-Ugric people, 429  
 Proto-Indo-European, 82  
 proto-Mongol, 14  
 Proto-North-Caucasian, 82  
 proto-Sino-Tibetan, 86  
 proto-Tibetan/Qiangic ancestors, 85  
 proto-Tungusic people, 14  
 Pu Dongshi, 586  
 Pu Dongyin, 586  
 Pu Kaizong, 643  
 Pu Shoucheng, 643  
 Pu Shengtao and Chen Shouyuan, 203  
 Pu Shougeng, 643–44, 715, 717  
 Pu Shiwen, 643  
 Pu Yuan'gui, 597, 600  
 Pu Zezhi, 591, 594–97, 613  
 Puban, 36, 459  
 Pucha Alibusun, 341  
 Pucha Dingzhu, Wanyan Chenheshang and Pucha  
     Guannu, 354, 362, 563  
 Pucha Guannu, 362, 470–72, 481  
 Pucha Heda, 474, 569  
 Pucha Hezhu and Nipanggu-huashan, 357  
 Pucha Qijin, 334  
 Pucha Shoucun, 314  
 Pucha Yila, 344  
 Pucha Zhengliu, 284  
 Pucha-tumu and Da-zhou-ren's Jurchens, 547  
 Pucheng, 203, 287, 355, 459, 468  
 Pu'e, 355, 359–60, 362, 462, 464  
 Pusan (Pagan, Burma), 679–80  
 Pusan army, 679  
 Pugu Huai'en, 53–54, 57–8, 75, 97, 104  
 Pugu Jun, 101  
 Pugu Zhizhong, 104  
 Puhua (Bukhara), 429  
 Puhua-tiemu'er, 710, 715  
 Punjab, 445  
 Puo-ha-er (Bukhara), 353  
 puppet Da-chu emperor Zhang Bangchu, 529  
 puppet Da-Jinn emperor, 160  
 puppet Emperor Ruizong, 45  
 puppet Liu-Qi dynasty emperor Li Cheng, 281, 378,  
     380, 537  
 puppet Sui emperor, 29, 36  
 Pusan Anzhen and Heshilie-hengduan, 338  
 Pusan Duan, 331, 341  
 Pusan Kui, 317, 551  
 Pusan Wanzhong, 346, 350, 557  
 Pusan Zhongyi, 547, 551  
 Pushan-gong hereditary title, 31  
 Pushan-gong-ying core troops, 34  
 Puwa, 359–60, 362, 462, 464  
 Puxian Wannu, 339, 344, 417, 458, 478, 482

Puyang, 63, 145, 149, 250, 254  
Puyeo, 294, 296  
Puyo, 14, 294, 296  
Puzhou, 112–13, 126, 145, 149  
Pyongyang, 31, 44, 666, 669–70

## Q

Qadaq, 507–8, 510  
Qaili, 427–28  
Qaili and Qaimich rivers, 418, 427  
Qaimich (Qaimacli), 427–28  
Qaimich, 427–28  
Qaimich Rivers, 418, 422, 425, 427–28, 431  
Qanbagud, 373–74  
Qarakhitai (Qara-Khitay), 7, 423, 393  
*qari*, 357  
Qayisang, 690, 693  
Qazvin, 431–32, 436, 447–48  
Q-haplogroup Shatuo Turks, 220  
Q-haplogroup Turkic people, 383  
Qi An, 632  
Qi Fang, Liu Li, Lu Shang and Liu Gang, 534  
Qi Kerang, 117, 124, 126  
Qi Gong, 549  
Qi Zongju, 239, 268  
Qi-jun (Ji'nan), 33  
Qi-nu, 418  
Qi2-guo, 137, 142–4, 147, 179–80, 261  
Qi-yan, 370–71, 377  
Qi2xian, 610  
Qi2zhou, 130–31, 135, 155, 206  
Qi3yang, 645  
Qi3zhou, 232, 234, 308, 329, 338  
Qian2zhou, 157, 184, 585  
Qian Chu, 198–200  
Qian Chuan'guan, 198–99  
Qian Chuanliao, 197–8  
Qian Chuanqi, 198  
Qian Chuan'qiu, 191, 202  
Qian Hongzong, 199  
Qian Hongzuo, 199, 207  
Qian Hongchu, 198–200  
Qian Daxin, 331, 372–3, 664  
Qian Hongchu, 198–200  
Qian Hongzuo, 197, 199, 207  
Qian Laozhi, 644  
Qian Liu, 135–36, 138, 189–92, 196–99, 203  
Qian Shixiong and Meng Jincha, 31  
Qian Shuoyou, 628  
Qian Yuan'guan, 199  
Qian Zhensun, 625

Qiang Jun, 460, 564  
Qiang Shen, 464, 470, 474  
Qiangs, 81–85, 87, 89, 259–62, 277–78  
Qiangs and Tibetans, 82  
Qianshan, 221, 573–74, 704, 715  
Qian-shui River, 81, 259  
Qiantang-jiang River, 196–7, 635, 642  
*qian-xia*, 238, 267, 271  
Qianzhou, 659, 689  
Qian-zhou, 191, 198, 200, 201–2, 208–9  
Qibi, 28, 48  
Qibi-Heli, 44  
Qichun, 54, 112, 206, 573–74  
Qidaibuhua, 657–58  
Qidan, 15, 253, 366–67  
Qieli-suge, 614, 637–8  
Qiedi-buhua and Ku-ta-yi-er-ka's Mongol, 519–20  
Qielietai surname (Uyгур), 477  
*Qielian* (ger-ünkoüd, i.e., servants), 500  
*qie-xue*, 405, 452, 659  
Qifang-guan, 362, 562, 564, 566, 579  
Qifu Qian'gui, 87–88  
Qimin Khan, 27–28, 39, 43  
Qin Emperor Shihuangdi, 4, 7, 9, 30, 446  
Qin emperor Zi-ying, last, 718  
Qin King Zhaoxiangwang, 5–6  
Qiu Chuji (Changchun-zhenren), 425, 435, 441–6, 515  
Qin Hui, 540, 542–43, 552  
Qin Lang, 13  
Qin Shubao, 33–5, 37, 40  
Qin Pei, 137  
Qin Yan, 115, 126  
Qin Yanhui, 184–85, 187  
Qin Zhongquan, 128–29  
Qin Zhongxiao, 584  
Qin Zongheng, 126, 185  
Qin Zongquan, 64, 116, 118, 120–22, 125–29, 183, 200, 208  
Qin Zongyan, 128, 183  
Qin-cha (Kipchak), 353, 447–48, 450, 483, 498  
Qin-huai River, 534  
Qin-Long army and Heh Lüguang, 98  
Qin-shui River, 23, 56  
Qin-wang, King, 34, 39, 138, 152, 186  
Qing dynasty, 243, 309–10, 372–73, 379, 381  
Qing Emperor Shizu, 219  
Qinghai, 80, 89, 93–94, 259–60, 266–68, 281  
Qinghai-jun, 134, 207–8  
Qinghe, 32, 507, 717  
Qinghe-kou River, 550  
Qinghe rebellion, 32  
Qinghe River, 548

Qinghua, 681–82  
Qingju-cheng, 587, 614  
Qinglang and Yuanxi garrisons, 595  
Qingli Peace Accord, 240, 272–73  
Qinglongbu, 354  
Qing-shui rivermouth, 133  
Qingtang, 245, 268, 275, 278–79  
Qingxiang, 355  
Qingxiguan, 104  
Qingxu, 54–56, 75  
Qingyang, 459–60, 563, 565, 712  
Qingyangduo, 473  
Qingyang siege, 563  
Qingyeyuan, 566, 577–80, 592  
Qingyeyuan Campaign, 580  
Qingzhou, 38, 89, 119–20, 163, 325, 334–35  
Qinling Ridge, 84, 103, 460–61, 463  
Qinyang, 128, 250  
Qinzhou, 85, 96, 180–82, 262, 267, 329–30, 537, 551–52  
Qinzhou *zhupo*, 267  
Qiongzhou, 104, 176, 548, 584  
Qipchak, 353, 447–49  
Qiqihar, 300, 307, 311, 331  
Qirim, 488  
Qishilie-hushahu, 410  
Qishui, 703, 706  
Qiuchi, 85  
Qiu Chuji, 443–44, 446  
Qiuci, 42, 44, 90–91, 93, 100  
Qiu Fu, 62  
Qiu Hongli, 126  
Qiu Shenji, 45  
Qiu Shiliang, 61–2  
Qiu Tuo, 550–51  
Qiu Yue, 574  
Qiwa-cheng (Kiev), 490  
Qiwowen-shi people, 377  
*Qiyao-li* (calendrical astrology based on the seven planets);  
Qizhou, 126, 131, 232, 573–74, 610  
Qizhou and Huangzhou prefectures, 645  
Qlmich, 427–28  
Qom, 431–32, 441, 447  
Qori-Toumat, 371  
Qu Cheng, 338  
Qu Chengmei (Khuc Thua My), 209  
Qu Chengyu (Khuc Thua Du), 209  
Qu Chu, Lai Zhengsun, and Xie Yingfu, 718  
Qu Duan, 530, 535  
Qu Huan, 111  
Qu Hao, 209

Qu Tutong, Yin Kaishan, Chai Shao, 40  
Qu Xin, 564  
Qu Wentai, 42  
Qu-chu, 392, 572–73, 583  
Qu-chu-lv (Kuchlug), 394, 420, 426  
Qu-shui River, 600  
Quan Gui, 566  
Quan Shixiong, 183  
Quan Zicai, 571–72  
Quanzhou, 201–2, 204–7, 218, 643–44, 714–16  
Quanzhou and Zhangzhou, 207, 225  
Qudu, 394–95, 398, 403–4, 420–21  
Que-jin, 677  
Que-teqin, 51  
Qu-jiang River, 584, 587, 593, 598, 600, 615  
Qurusman, 483–84  
Qushe, 51  
Quyeh-he River, 277

## R

Rab, 503  
Racibórz, 494  
Rafal Jaworski, 492–93  
ransom, 161, 172, 197, 501  
Rao Yingzi, 606  
Raozzhou, 255, 301  
Raofeng-guan, 461, 536, 565, 583  
Raole, 16, 78, 298–99  
Raozhou, 78, 116–17, 191, 628–30  
Rashid ad-Din, 363, 370, 373, 386–87, 437–38  
Rashid al-Din, 384, 392, 488, 504  
Ratchnevsky, Paul, 79, 365, 370, 385, 388–89, 391–93, 395, 399  
raw barbarians, 8, 291, 298, 366, 368  
raw Jurchen tribes, 300  
Razibay, 696–97  
rebel Chen Youliang, 684, 708  
rebel Da-Qi, 121  
rebel Feng Tianyu, 338, 353  
rebel Huang Chao, 112–14, 119, 121–22, 175–76, 200, 405  
rebel Liang Shidu, 68  
rebel Li Maozhen, 132  
rebel Li Mi, 33  
rebel Li Xiaozhong, 532  
rebel Li Zicheng, 265  
rebel Liu Wuzhou, 29  
rebel Liu Xing, 112  
rebel Liu Yanzhang, 115  
rebel Liu Zhen, 110  
rebel Liu Zhengyan, 533

rebel Liu Zhijun, 143  
 rebel Lu Mingyue, 33  
 rebel Miao Yu, 533  
 rebel Ming Yuzhen, 709  
 rebel Puxian Wannu, 331  
 rebel Qin Zongheng, 126  
 rebel Qin Zongquan, 126, 185  
 rebel Ren Fu, 97  
 rebel Shang Rang, 113, 116  
 rebel Shiregi, 619  
 rebel Soong Jiang, 533  
 rebel Sun Ru, 186  
 rebel Sun Xuanya, 33  
 rebel Tian Chengsi, 56  
 rebel Wang Bodang, 33  
 rebel Wang Chengzong, 109  
 rebel Wang Hongli, 112  
 rebel Wang Maozhang's job, 191  
 rebel Wang Quan, 704  
 rebel Wang Shen zhi, 200  
 rebel Wang Xianzhi, 113, 196  
 rebel Wang Xu, 200, 208  
 rebel Yang An'er, 347, 555–56  
 rebel Yelü Liuge, 323, 412  
 rebel Yin Ziqi, 55  
 rebel Yu Tingyu, 705, 712  
 rebel Zeng Faxing, 704  
 rebel Zhang Jue2, 247, 256  
 rebel Zhang Xuanren, 112  
 rebel Zhou Yuan'er, 338  
 rebel Zhu Wen, 121  
 rebel Zhu Wen's Defection, 121  
 rebel Zhu Youneng, 149  
 rebel Zhu Yuanzhang, 693, 699, 707, 710  
 rebel minister Wang Shichong in April, 29  
 rebels Huang Chao and Qin Zongquan, 122  
 rebellion by Wang Xianzhi, 63  
 rebellion by Wang Xianzhi and Huang Chao, 22, 63  
 rebellion in Changyuan, 112  
 rebellion in Linhuang and Tai4zhou, 313  
 rebellion in Yunnan, 71  
 rebellion of Li Cheng, 533  
 rebellion of Liu Heida, 37  
 rebellion of Lu Ju and Tan Hongqi, 208  
 rebellion of Luzhou, 637  
 rebellion of Meng Zhixiang, 158  
 rebellion of Mongol General Li Tan3 in Ji'nan, 614  
 rebellion of Red Turbans, 699  
 rebellion of Shi Jingtang, 159, 171, 262  
 rebellion of Wang Xianzhi, 22  
 rebellion of Xueyantuo, 43  
 Red Jacket Army, 335–36, 338, 346–47, 354, 358, 414, 421, 553–56, 559, 560  
 Red River, 681  
 Red Turbans, 699, 701–3, 705–6, 709–10, 712, 723  
 reforms, 58, 167, 237, 242–43  
     Fan Zhongyan's Qingli Reform, 233, 237  
     Jia Sidao's currency reform, 615  
     Jurchen Jin Emperor Aizong's reform, 357  
     Mongol Yuan Zhizhi Reform, 696  
     Soong dynasty civil service exam reform, 273  
     Tangut reform, 269  
     Toktoghan's reform, 698  
     Wang Anshi's Xining Reform, 233, 242-4, 248  
     Yang Yan's two-taxes reform, 58  
 Reka, 485  
 Ren Cun, 359  
 Ren Dejing, 282  
 Ren Fu, 97, 237, 240, 271–72  
 Ren Huan, 150, 154  
 Ren Shang, 10  
 Ren Xin, 551  
 Ren Yi, 577  
 Ren Zhi and Ren Rushan, 339  
 René Grousset, 425–26, 431, 435–36, 440–44  
 returning Emperor Huizong's coffin, 540  
 revisionist, 319–20, 410–11, 430–35, 439–41, 488–90  
 revisionist history, 320, 371–72, 435, 439  
 Rhine River, 487  
 Riazan, 484–85, 490  
 Rincinbal, 698  
 Rita Mologa River, 486  
 River Amu-Darya, 26, 429–31, 434–35, 437–39, 441, 446  
 River Buhan-chuan, 431  
 River Duan-he, 490  
 River Danube, 502  
 River Don, 449, 484, 689  
 River Emil, 306, 425, 688  
 River Fu-jiang, 583  
 River Huai-shui, 340  
 River Jialing-jiang, 583  
 River Kerulen, 311, 408  
 River Khalka, 449  
 River Liao-he, 325  
 River Mures, 498  
 River Oxus, 26  
 Rive Pearl, 646–47  
 River Syr-Darya, 612, 687  
 River Yenisei, 79, 392–93  
 River Yang-he, 323-24, 328, 411–13  
 riverbank cities and forts of Diaoyucheng, 637  
 Rodana (Rodna), 497, 499



- Rogierus, 497–99, 501–2  
Roman emissary, 218, 699, 720  
Roman emperor, 450  
Roman Hautala, 492, 498–99  
Roman Ingvarevich, 485  
Rong2zhou, 75, 629  
Rong2-zhou, 99, 117, 176, 209  
Rong-jiang River, 615  
Rongzhou, 62, 98, 253, 260  
Ru2zhou, 132, 232  
Rubruck, 393, 498, 523  
Rui4zhou, 604  
Rui'an, 642–43  
Ruizhou prefecture in Manchuria, 349  
Ruizong, son-emperor, 46  
Rukn ad-Din, 520  
Rukn ad-Din Kurshah, 520–21  
Rukn ad-Din's father, 520  
Rukn ud-Din, 432–33, 438  
Rum, 427, 448, 451–52  
Rum ruler Kaykhusraw II, 452  
Runan, 468, 475, 480, 547, 550–51  
Ruruans, 25–26, 66, 365–66, 383  
Ruruan surname, 25  
Rus, 339, 341, 447–50, 484–87, 491, 504  
Rus campaigns, 489  
Ru-shui River, 128, 475, 569  
Rus Principalities, 449, 484, 490  
Russian chronicles, 485  
Russian mercenaries, 505  
Russians, 270–71, 448–49, 483–86, 490–91, 505  
Russians and Ku-qing people, 498  
Russians and Ukraine people, 491  
Rusudan, Queen, 452  
Rusudani, 452  
Ruzhou, 117, 465, 468, 473–74, 569, 572  
Ryazan, 484–85, 490  
*ryoseikoku*, 673–74  
Ryukyu, 197, 685–86, 724
- S**
- Sa'ariker/Saari River, 388  
Saari River, 457  
Sabzevar, 434–35, 520  
Sai-dian-chi and Zheng Ding's Mongols, 616, 620  
Saidianchi-zhansiding, 676, 678  
Sajisibuhua, 461–63, 469–70, 480–81  
Sajo River, 498, 500–501  
Sajo River and Tisza River, 500  
Sakchu, 669  
Sakhalin Island, 51, 724  
Sali, 385, 512, 519, 521  
Salita, 458, 477, 669–70  
salt smuggler, 63, 112  
Samanid dynasty, 427  
Samarkand, 306–7, 345, 425–27, 429–30, 433–34, 443  
Samarkand campaign, 435  
Samarkand siege, 431, 435  
Sami people, 369  
Samohe, 329, 414  
Samoyeds, 369, 399  
*San-chao Bei-meng Hui-bian*, 247, 304, 310, 381  
Sanchuankou, 237, 240, 271, 273  
Sandan, 515  
San-dan-ba, 715  
Sandomir, 492–94  
Sandomir siege, 493  
Sanfengshan Battle, 340, 416, 460–65, 464, 567  
Sanfengshan debacle, 464, 471–72, 480  
Sanfengshan Mountain, 463–64, 479, 567  
Sang Hongzhi, 180  
Sang Shijie, 712  
Sang Weihai, 160–64  
Sang Zan, 234  
*sangkun*, Kerait prince Yi-la-he (Yilahesangkun, Ilqa *Senggun*), i.e., son of Toghrul (To'oril), 454  
San'gui, 614, 637  
Sanmen, 341  
San-miao people, 82–84, 86  
Sanmohe, 329, 414  
Sanmohe-badu's Mongols, 282, 338  
San-zhi-wu, 313, 315, 385, 387, 390  
Sarai, 498, 504, 523, 585  
Sarban, 688–89  
Sartaq, 498, 505, 523, 669  
Sassanid Empire, 26  
Sava River, 503  
Saxony, 495–96  
Sayf ad-Din, 715–16  
Sayf Al-Din Bughrakh/Saif, 437, 444  
scallion name, 80  
Second Battle of Dachangyuan, 459, 464, 561  
Second European Campaign, 483  
*Secret History*, 371–74, 383–84, 388–89, 437–38, 441–44, 457–58  
Selenga River, 397  
Seljiuts, 313, 315, 385, 387, 389–90, 393–95  
Seljiut subtribes, 315  
Seljuk Empire, 427  
Seljuks, 427, 451–52  
Seljuk Turks, 450–51  
Semiryeche, 306, 423, 428

Semnan, 441, 447, 520  
*Semuren*, 612, 664  
 Seng Ren, 259, 261, 270, 288  
 Sesame Li, 699  
 Sha Liu'er (Sha Liu), 709  
 Shaanzhou, 52, 54, 56, 465–67, 474  
 Shabolüe Khan, 26–27  
 Shaboluo Khan, 44  
 Shah Muhammad, 426–29, 436, 438  
 Shan4zhou, 245, 278–79, 533  
 Shanchan, 513, 516–17, 590, 677  
 Shandong, 32–34, 295, 343, 347–48, 350–51, 414, 421, 555, 559–61, 702–  
 Shan-dong, 339, 341, 351–52, 357, 550  
 Shandong peninsula, 293–95, 340–43, 360–61, 553–56, 558–59, 561  
 Shandong Red Jacket Army, 350, 557  
 Shang Junchang, 112  
 Shang Lu, 309–10  
 Shang Qi, 665  
 Shang Rang, 113, 116, 121, 123, 129  
 Shang Ting, 608, 613–14, 657, 660  
 Shang Yi, 723  
 Shang Yue, 652  
 Shan-guan Pass (cypress), sacked, 714  
 Shangdu, 319, 608, 696, 700, 720–21  
 Shang-du, 350, 515, 612, 673  
 Shang dynasty, 3, 229, 293–94, 663  
 Shangguan Kui, 638  
 Shangguan Wan'er, 49  
 Shangguan Wu, 532  
 Shangguan Yi, 46  
 Shangjing, 78, 312, 331, 344  
 Shang-jing, 77–78, 231, 255, 301, 326, 331  
 Shang King Cheng-tang, 609  
 Shang King Shang-tang, 612, 663, 671  
 Shangqiu, 112–13, 217, 567, 571–72, 577  
 Shang Rang, second-ranking rebel leader, 123  
 Shangrao, 191, 201–2, 628  
 Shangzhou, 465, 467, 538, 546  
 Shanxi, 110, 211–13, 342–43, 348, 709, 720–21  
 Shanzhou, 96, 101, 268, 341, 351  
 Shao Bo, 123, 135  
 Shao Hongyi, 489, 525  
 Shao Hongyuan, 548  
 Shao Long, 538  
 Shao Ru, 130  
 Shao Yong, 3, 17, 86, 325, 350  
 Shao Yuanping, 489, 525  
 Shaoxing Peace Treaty, 281, 308, 380–81, 538–39  
 Sha'to (Shatuo), 101, 106–9, 170, 172, 211, 217  
 Sha'to Turks, 391  
 Shatuo and Tanqut mercenary army, 111  
 Shatuo cavalry, 101, 109–10, 112, 170, 400  
 Shatuo emperor and prime ministers, 158  
 Shatuo founding emperor's family, 106  
 Shatuo founding emperor's origin, 106  
 Shatuo Jinshan, 108  
 Shatuo Jinzhong, 100–101, 109, 170  
 Shatuo mercenary army, 113, 119  
 Shatuo Posterior Jinn, 230  
 Shatuo Posterior Tang, 88  
 Shatuo tribe origin, 164, 211  
 Shatuo Turks, 59, 113–14, 118, 170, 217, 368–69  
 Shazhou, 99–101, 162, 239, 264–65, 267–68, 454–55  
 Shazhou territories, 76, 101, 239–40, 264  
 She4zhou, 190–91  
 Shekui Khan, 28  
*Shence*-jun, 60, 62–63, 132, 134, 175–77  
 Shen Cong and Qin Zongquan, 129  
 Shen Duo, 350, 557  
 Shen Huzi, 200  
 Shen Jun, 345, 560  
 Shen Kuo, 266, 276  
 Shen Ru, 116  
 Shen Shihou, 162  
 Shen Suchun, 358  
 Shen Yun, 151  
 Shen Zhong, 629  
 Shenxi, 272, 355–56, 460–64, 535–36, 564–66, 577–78  
 Shen-xi, 83, 85, 87–88, 260, 275, 280–82, 531, 533, 657–58  
 She-zu minority people, 643–44  
 Shi Anshi, 334  
 Shi Bi, 641  
 Shi Bin, 533  
 Shi Bingzhi, 335, 413  
 Shi Chaoyi, 56–57, 75  
 Shi Chonggui, 162–64, 172  
 Shi Chongxin and Shi Chongyi, 161  
 Shi Chongrui, 162  
 Shi Dai, 584  
 Shi Dangke, 567, 578  
 Shi Gui, 346, 350–51, 353, 357, 557–58  
 Shi Guoying, 640  
 Shi Hai, 344  
 Shi Hao, 548  
 Shi Hongzhao, 165, 211  
 Shi Huawu, 339, 553  
 Shi Hu, 85  
 Shi Jiantang, 145–46, 149  
 Shi Jianyong, 144  
 Shi Jie, 569

- Shi Jindao, 333, 335, 339, 417  
 Shi Jingchun, 118  
 Shi Jingsi, 123, 149  
 Shi Jingtang, 152–53, 155–62, 164, 171–73, 262  
 Shi Jingtang and Zhao Dejun, 159  
 Shi Jun, 545, 594  
 Shi Juwen, 628  
 Shi Miyuan, 552, 554, 560, 568  
 Shi Naian and Luo Guanzhong, 707  
 Shi Poli, 336  
 Shi Pu, 122–23, 127, 129–30, 189  
 Shi Qing and Xia Quan, 356  
 Shi Qizhen, 274  
 Shi Quan, 356, 507, 559, 619  
 Shi Shouxin, 219, 221–23, 230, 237  
 Shi Shu, 591–92, 598, 601, 610–11, 616  
 Shi Siming, 53–54, 56–57, 75, 97  
 Shi Songzhi, 472–73, 568, 571–72, 574, 577  
 Shi Tian'an, 591  
 Shi Tianlu, 359, 453, 560  
 Shi Tianni, 330, 333, 335, 358, 414–15, 560  
 Shi Tianxiang, 332, 335, 339, 414–15, 417  
 Shi Tianying, 286, 332, 353, 355  
 Shi Tianze, 358–60, 453, 459, 468–70, 512, 525, 560, 575, 600–601, 609–10  
 Shi Tianze and Khubilai's son-in-law Hu-la-chu, 618  
 Shi Wanbao and Sheng Yanshi, 35  
 Shi Wenbing, 604  
 Shi Wenyong and Shi Wenzhong, 604  
 Shi Xiancheng, 60–61  
 Shi Xiong (Cao Wei dynasty), 66, 110  
 Shi Xiong, 400  
 Shi Xuan, 346  
 Shi Yan, 131, 133, 136  
 Shi Yanzhi, 605, 616  
 Shi Yezhu, 63  
 Shi Yi, 346, 556  
 Shi Yanchao, 166–7  
 Shi Yande, 182  
 Shi Yanqiong, 154  
 Shi Yong, 355  
 Shi Yuansun, 237, 240, 271, 273  
 Shi Yuanzuo, 127  
 Shi Zangji, 45  
 Shi Zuzhong, 628  
 Shi3 Jiantang, 144  
 Shi-er-wan, 448  
 Shi-lu, 245, 315, 371, 432  
 Shi-ji, 3–6, 90, 202, 258–59  
 Shi-jian-he River, 17, 67, 367  
 Shi-wei, 8, 16–18, 78, 223–24, 296–8, 299, 302–3, 366–68, 399, 370  
 Shi-wei Major tribe, 17, 67, 367  
 Shi-wei name, 17, 368  
 Shibao, 483, 488, 500  
 Shibi Khan, 28–29, 32, 36–37, 39, 41  
 Shibu-cheng, 95  
 Shidianmi, 26  
 Shigi-Khutukhu, 363, 371, 442–44, 572  
 Shikhik-hutug (Shiji-Huduhu), 392, 441–44, 478, 572  
 Shiliemen (Shi-lie-men/ Shiremun), 509–10  
 Shilu (raw Jurchen chieftain), 300  
 Shimao Culture, 1  
 Shiite, 441, 716  
 Shimo clan, 77, 322–23, 410  
 Shimo Anzhi, 596, 615, 636  
 Shimo Bulao, 636–38  
 Shimo Beidi'er, 342, 419  
 Shimo Chala, 473  
 Shimo Ming'an, 322, 333, 335, 410–1  
 Shimo Qi'er, 616  
 Shimo Shiji and Shimo Song, 475  
 Shimo Yanshanu, Pucha Dingzhu, Wanyan Chenheshang and Pucha Guannu, 362  
 Shimo Yexian, 325, 327, 332–33, 342–3, 414, 342, 419  
 Shimo Yisun, 713  
 Shimo Xianzhi, 613  
 Shimo-gougou, 635–36  
 Shimo-hezha, 615  
 Shiregi, 688–89  
 Shiremun, 507, 509  
 Shiru, 120, 131  
 Shirvan, 448, 451–52  
 Shiwei and Mongolia territories, 370  
 Shizhan Hexi, 286, 355  
 Shizhou, 276, 338, 353, 456, 584–85  
 Shouchun, 168, 219, 221, 532–33, 586  
 Shoushi-li, 665  
 Shu-fu-mao's tribe, 81, 259  
 Shu-Han army and Zhong Hui's Cao-Wei army, 154  
 Shu-wang, King, 50, 153, 158, 179, 181, 539, 551–52  
 Shuoluhan, 323, 461  
 Shuoluo, 455, 562  
 Shuozhibie, 388  
 Shuozhou, 28–29, 114, 247–48, 319–20, 325, 412  
 Shuzhou, 42, 101, 107, 573–74  
 Silzhou, 524, 578–79, 595–97, 601, 605, 639, 595, 679, 686, 692  
 Silzhou ruler Tian Yingyin, 595, 605  
 Si4-shui rivermouth, 111  
 Si4zhou, 110–12, 547–48, 550–51, 564, 570–71, 575–76  
 Sibangduo, 236, 266  
 Siberia, 1–2, 274, 333, 369–70

Sichuan, 15, 82, 84, 157–58, 175–78, 183, 260, 329,  
 481, 514–16, 524–5, 551, 568, 582–85, 587–97,  
 596, 620, 635, 638–39, 652, 678, 706–7, 722  
 Sichuan and Huai-he River Confucians, 511  
 Sichuan and Jing-Hu battlegrounds, 591  
 Sichuan basin, 181–83, 549–52, 579–83, 585–88,  
 592–94, 613–15  
 Sichuan campaign, 152, 158, 583  
 Sichuan circuits, 157, 587, 607–8, 657  
 Sichuan mountain Forts, 588–89  
 Sidibala, 695  
 Si-duo-du, 266–67  
 siege of Anfeng, 574  
 siege of Baoji and Dasan-guan, 124  
 siege of Caizhou, 123, 474, 481, 547  
 siege of Canton, 238  
 siege of Changzhou, 632  
 siege of Chengdu, 117, 176, 596, 636  
 siege of Chongqing, 585, 635, 637–38  
 siege of Chu3zhou, 550–51  
 siege of Datong, 320, 326, 411, 413  
 siege of Diaoyucheng (Line & Hook Fishing Fort),  
 524–25, 591, 597, 637–38  
 siege of Dong-jing, 249  
 siege of Dongping, 348, 351, 453  
 siege of E'zhou, 136, 190, 590, 592, 604  
 siege of Fancheng, 591, 598, 618  
 siege of Fengxiang, 64, 180, 287, 356  
 siege of Fu2zhou, 206–7, 704, 716  
 siege of Fu3zhou, 322  
 siege of Gui'de, 469  
 siege of Heyang, 127  
 siege of Hezhou, 598  
 siege of Hongdu, 713  
 siege of Huangzhou, 575  
 siege of Jia-ding, 589, 616, 636  
 siege of Jianzhou, 204, 206  
 siege of Jing-nan, 128, 183  
 siege of Jurchen Xi-jing city, 326, 413, 542  
 siege of Ke-tu-yu at Ying2zhou, 73  
 siege of Luoyang, 34, 172, 262, 467  
 siege of Luzhou, 613  
 siege of Minkas, 488–90  
 siege of mount Damghan and Gerdukh fort, 520  
 siege of Nan-jing, 280, 465–66  
 siege of Neyshabur, 434–35, 440  
 siege of Peixian by A-zhu-lu's Mongol, 473  
 siege of Pereyasavl and Chernigov, 488  
 siege of Qi2-guo capital city Fengxian, 147  
 siege of Quanzhou, 643  
 siege of Sandomir, 493  
 siege of Shazhou, 287, 360, 455  
 siege of Tai4zhou, 331  
 siege of Tanguts' Lingzhou, 455  
 siege of Termez, 434  
 siege of Tianchang and Luhe, 117  
 siege of Urgenchi, 433, 435–36  
 siege of Vladimir, 485  
 siege of Wang Shichong at Luoyang, 37  
 siege of Xiangyang and Fancheng, 619, 626  
 siege of Xihezhou, 361, 562  
 siege of Xi-jing, 284, 320, 327, 410  
 siege of Yan3zhou, 167  
 siege of Yangzhou, 318, 409, 551, 598  
 siege of Youzhou, 148, 170  
 siege of Zhang Shicheng at Gaoyou, 706  
 siege of Zhen1zhou for aiding Guazhou, 627  
 siege of Zhongdu, 329, 331, 412, 414, 416  
 siege of Zhongxing-fu, 318, 409, 455  
*sijin*, 16, 42, 107, 170  
 Silesia, 491, 493–96  
 Silesian capital of Breslau, 494  
 Simingzhou, 683–84  
 Simo, 38, 43  
 Sino-barbarian autocracy, 106, 211  
 Sino-Tibetan family, 3, 80  
 Sino-Tibetan languages, 1  
 Sino-Tibetan people, 369  
 Sino-Tibetan Qiangic people, 81  
 Sino-Tibetans, 2, 80–81, 83, 369–70  
 Siret River, 498–99  
 Si-shui River pass, 531  
 Sit, Rika, 486  
 Siverskyi Donets River, 484, 490  
 Sogdian, 22, 53, 74, 100, 104  
 Soong Bai, 229  
 Soong Guangbao, 181  
 Soong Gui, 471  
 Soong Hao, 116, 183  
 Soong Jiang, 246, 249  
 Soong Jing, 607, 623  
 Soong Lian, 373  
 Soong Lingwen, 92  
 Soong Jiujiia, 326  
 Soong Longji, 685  
 Soong Sheng, 724  
 Soong Shenqian, 159  
 Soong Shun, 233  
 Soong Wei, 112–13  
 Soong Wentong, 125, 134  
 Soong Wo, 223  
 Soong Yanyun, 162  
 Soong Yao, 145  
 Soong Yi2, 330

- Soong Yun, 268  
 Soong Zizhen, 603, 658  
 Songpan, 38, 90, 92, 260  
 Songshanzhou, 78  
 Songtsen Gampo, 80, 90, 163, 266  
 Songzhou, 90, 94, 99, 222, 465  
 Soong Anfeng-jun, 556, 575  
 Soong Anfeng-jun Garrison, 556  
 Soong capital city Dong-jing, 529  
 Soong capital city of Lin'an, 607  
*Soong-chao shishi lei-yuan*, 231  
 Soong literati Jiang Shaoyu, *Soong-chao shishi lei-yuan* (garden of categorized facts from the Soong dynasty), 231  
 Soong Dowager Empress Xie-shi, 626, 667  
 Soong dynasty literati Fan Chengda, 517  
 Soong dynasty neo-Confucianists, 326  
 Soong dynasty scholar Shao Bo, 123  
 Soong dynasty scholar Sima Guang, 309, 372, 375, 378–79  
 Soong dynasty scholar Zhu Xi, 309  
 Soong dynasty's conquest of Southern Tang, 515  
 Soong dynasty's founder Zhao Kuangyin, 154  
 Soong emissary Wang Yuanshan, 592  
 Soong emissary Xie Ji, 514  
 Soong emissary Yu Rong, 324  
 Soong emissary Zhao Gong, 347, 555  
 Soong emissary Zhen Dexiu, 558  
 Soong emissary Zhou Cishuo, 575  
 Soong emperors, 194–95, 224–25, 229–30, 233, 602, 643–44, 646–47, 652  
 Soong Emperor Duanzong, 640  
 Soong Emperor Duzong, 616, 667  
 Soong Emperor Gaozong, 529, 534, 537, 542, 548  
 Soong Emperor Gongdi, 626, 635, 673, 676  
 Soong Emperor Guangzong, 549  
 Soong Emperor Huizong, 219–20, 246, 248, 302  
 Soong Emperor Lizong, 219, 569–70, 572–73, 585–86, 604, 607  
 Soong Emperor Ningzong, 317, 549–50, 552, 554  
 Soong Emperor Qinzong, 248–49, 251  
 Soong Emperor Renzong, 236, 238–41, 272, 274, 649  
 Soong Emperor Shaodi, 644, 646  
 Soong Emperor Shenzong, 242–44, 275–76, 456  
 Soong Emperor Taizong, 212–13, 226, 228, 230–1, 263  
 Soong Emperor Taizu, 182, 188, 194–95, 200, 210–12, 219, 223–26, 263  
 Soong Emperor Xiaozong, 543, 546, 548–49  
 Soong Emperor Yingzong, 239, 242  
 Soong Emperor Zhenzong, 233–36, 244–245, 264–67, 276–77  
 Soong founder-emperor's father Zhao Hongyin, 648–49  
 Soong founder-emperor Zhao Kuangyin, 165, 238  
 Soong General Bi Zaiyu, 531  
 Soong General Cheng Song, 550  
 Soong General Chong Fu, 276–77  
 Soong General Chong Shidao, 274  
 Soong General Chong Shiheng, 272  
 Soong General Deng Wenlong, 318, 409  
 Soong General Dou Shenbao, 264  
 Soong General Fang Dacong, 514  
 Soong General Gao Da, 591–92, 600, 604  
 Soong General Guo Cheng, 277  
 Soong General Guo Jin, 213  
 Soong General Guo Rong, 232  
 Soong General Haan Minyi, 248  
 Soong General He Yanwei, 580  
 Soong General Huang Jun, 644, 668  
 Soong General Huang Shunqing, 574–75  
 Soong General Li Jilong, 233, 263  
 Soong General Liu Rui, 578  
 Soong General Liu Shiguang, 538  
 Soong General Li Xiaoyi, 552  
 Soong General Li Zhingjie, 278  
 Soong General Lü Da, 592  
 Soong General Meng Gong, 471, 480, 568  
 Soong General Miao Zaicheng, 640  
 Soong General Peng Yibin, 348, 453  
 Soong General Shangguan Kui, 638  
 Soong General Shou Qing, 586  
 Soong General Sun Shixun, 534  
 Soong General Tong Guan, 302  
 Soong General Wang Shan, 245, 278, 318, 409  
 Soong General Wang Anjie, 628  
 Soong General Wang Wen, 577  
 Soong General Wang Zhong, 597  
 Soong General Wang Zuo, 597  
 Soong General Wei Tong, 239, 268  
 Soong General Wu, 409  
 Soong General Wu Jie, 281  
 Soong General Wu Jiming, 629  
 Soong General Yang Li4, 596  
 Soong General Yang Zheng, 536  
 Soong General Yue Fei, 281, 551  
 Soong General Zhang Dian, 632  
 Soong General Zhang Ru, 631, 667  
 Soong General Zhang Yue, 597  
 Soong General Zhao, 638  
 Soong General Zhao Dingying, 637  
 Soong General Zhao Shun, 597

Soong General Zhong Shiheng, 241  
 Soong General Xia Gui, 639  
 Soong General Zhang Gui, 613  
 Soong generals, 278–79, 332, 347, 421, 546, 561–62, 589, 592–93, 667  
 Soong generals Duan Zheng and Zhang Gui<sup>4</sup>, 550  
 Soong generals Fu Qian and Kong Shouzheng, 230  
 Soong generals Hou Renbao and Sun Quanxing, 225  
 Soong generals Liu Hu and Tang Xiaoxin, 564, 571  
 Soong generals Liu Qi<sup>2</sup> and Wu Lin, 559  
 Soong generals Li Xiongtao and Chan Gao, 345  
 Soong generals Wang Jian and Cao Shixiong, 592  
 Soong generals Zhao Tingjin and Li Jilong, 231  
 Soong governor Zhang Xuan, 479  
 Soong Guanghua-jun, 568  
 Soong Huaide-jun Garrison, 250  
 Soong Huizong & Soong Qinzong, 248, 280  
*Soong-ji san-chao zheng-yao* (political highlights of three emperors' courts of the [Southern] Soong), 587  
 Soong King Yi-wang, 641  
 Soong Lingwen, 92  
 Soong literati Jiang Shaoyu, 231  
 Soong literati Liu Kai, 231  
 Soong loyalist Zheng Sixiao, 631, 664  
 Soong minister Fan Chengda, 539  
 Soong minister Hong Zikui, 552  
 Soong minister Hu Quan, 547  
 Soong minister Jia Xuanweng, 634  
 Soong minister Wu Jian, 635  
 Soong minister Xie Fangshu, 591  
 Soong minister Zhang Jie claiming, 243  
 Soong observer Huang Bing, 594  
 Soong refugee-Taoist Xu Daozong, 682  
 Soong royal family member Zhao Mengfu, 665  
 Soong's Longxing Northern Expedition, 547  
 Soong Tianshui-jun Army, 554  
 Soong traitor Li Cheng, 380  
 Soong Zaoyang-jun Garrison, 346, 556  
 Soong Zhongyi-jun, 353  
 Soong Zhongyi-jun Army General Peng Yibin, 358, 560  
 Sopron, 501  
 Soqq-usun River, 393  
 Soudagh, 448–49  
 Southern Liang, 8, 14, 85, 87  
 Southern Liang Dynasty Emperor Liang-wu-di, 230  
 Southern Russia campaign, 490  
 Southern Soong and Jurchen Jun, 308, 380, 538  
 Southern Soong and Korea, 670  
 Southern Soong Emperor Gaozong, 539  
 Southern Soong General Meng Gong, 474  
 Southern Soong's Longxing Northern Expedition 538  
 Southern Soong' Northern Expedition in invading Xincai to echo Li Tan<sup>3</sup>'s rebellion, 610  
 Southern Soong's Northern Campaign, 357  
 Southern Tang, 168, 187–88, 192–95, 205–7, 210–12, 219–21  
 Southern Tang Emperor Li Jing, 188, 205  
 Southern Tang Emperor Li Jing's usurpation, 205  
 Southern Tang General Chen Jue, 206  
 Southern Tang General Yan<sup>4</sup> Jingquan, 167  
 Southern Tang state and Wu-Yue state, 225  
 Spalatro, 502–3  
 Sternberg (Jaroslav of Sternberg), 496–97  
 stupa, 270–71  
 style names, 258  
 Subetei, 420–23, 425–29, 447–50, 456, 460, 464–70, 479–81, 484–87  
 Subetei and Cha-han attacking Southern Soong, 507  
 Subetei and Chepe, 423, 425, 427–8, 431–34, 447  
 Subetei and Mengke, 484, 487  
 Subetei killing King Liang-wang, 470, 481  
 Subetei's biography, 418, 420, 486–87, 491–92, 500  
 Subetei's son, 509, 513, 525–26, 604, 607–8  
 Su-bu-han, 460, 566  
 Suge, 614, 637–38  
 Sugetu, 622, 634, 677, 681–82  
 Sui dynasty minister Niu Hong, 252  
 Sui dynasty rebel Wang Shichong, 92  
 Sui dynasty's King Yue-wang Yang Jiong, 33  
 Sui Emperor Wendi, 21, 24, 27–28  
 Sui Emperor Yangdi, 15, 21, 29–30, 33–34, 36  
 Sui puppet emperor Yang Jiong, 35  
 Sui Shichang, 614, 618  
 Sui1-shui River, 111  
 Sui1zhou, 461, 463, 465, 659  
 Sui2zhou, 162, 260–63, 266, 272  
 Sui2zhou city, 274  
 Sui4zhou, 157, 176  
 Sui army, 22, 24, 27–28, 30–35  
 Suicheng, 231, 233–4, 343  
 Suicheng-Yangshan campaign, 227, 233, 254  
 Suide, 260–62, 272, 275–77, 340, 345  
 Suiyang, 52, 55, 75, 96, 465, 623  
 Suiyang city defenders, 55  
 Suiye, 42, 47, 92–94, 107–8, 428, 431  
 Suizhou, 157, 184, 346, 519, 537, 556, 573, 589, 625–26  
 Suli, 12–13  
 Sumuo, 18, 298  
 Sun Anfu, 644  
 Sun Anzu, 32–3

Sun Aocao, 67–68  
 Sun Chao, 101, 162, 265  
 Sun Cheng, 155–6  
 Sun Chengyou, 200  
 Sun Dading, 331–32  
 Sun Deya, 711  
 Sun Dezhao, eunuch Shence-jun army officer, 134  
 Sun Fu, 251  
 Sun Fujia  
 Sun Huchen, 606, 621, 627  
 Sun Gui and Hu Huaixiao, 641  
 Sun He, 146  
 Sun Jiye, 166  
 Sun Lu, 277  
 Sun Jin, Qin Hui and Wang Lun, 540  
 Sun Kui, 127, 129  
 Sun Quan, 50, 71–2  
 Sun Quanxing, 225  
 Sun Ru, 126–28, 137, 185, 187, 189  
 Sun Shengfu, 644  
 Sun Shi, 230, 240, 534  
 Sun Shixun and Yan Yun, 534  
 Sun Siwu, 625  
 Sun Sizong, 592  
 Sun Xuanya, 33  
 Sun Taichen, 641  
 Sun Tong, 715  
 Sun Wanrong, 47, 69–70  
 Sun Wo, 535  
 Sun Xian, 541  
 Sun Xiaozhe, 56  
 Sun Xingyou, 169, 222  
 Sun Xun, 535  
 Sun Yan, 136, 191  
 Sun Yat-sen, 391  
 Sun Zhizhi, 97  
 Sun Zhong, 218  
 Sun Zude, 239  
 sun eclipse, 686  
 Sungari River, 291, 300–1, 307, 312, 327, 330–31,  
 380–81  
 Sunni, 715  
 Suo-du, 634, 644–45, 677, 680–82  
 Suoge-bu barbarian tribe, 262  
 Suogu, 72  
 Suolu-hutu, 563  
 Suqnaq, 433  
 Sushen, 13, 291, 293–94, 299, 301  
 Sushen people, 293, 296  
 Sushen-shi, 13, 293  
 Sushen-shi people, 8, 13, 293  
 Su-shen-shi people, 294

Sushen tribe, 292, 296  
 Su-shui River, 228  
 Suyab, 418, 425, 428, 431  
 Suzdal, 485, 504  
 Suzhou, 99, 136, 191, 196, 198, 707  
 Suzong, 53–54, 75, 96, 300  
 Svyatoslavich, Mikhail, 504  
 Swedes, 487  
 Syr-Darya, 428–29, 431, 433, 435, 450  
 Syria, 522–23

## T

Tabai-jun, 578–79  
 Tabgac, 15–16  
 Tabriz, 446–48, 450–51, 688  
 Ta-cha-er, 569, 572, 591, 598, 657, 662  
 Ta-chu, 621, 684, 690  
 Tadu (Tadun), 7, 10–11, 16, 66  
 Taeju, 669  
 Ta-hai's attack of Chongqing-fu, 584  
 Tai Meng, 135–36, 189, 196  
 Tai-buhua, 706  
 Tai-Kadai people, 513  
 Tai4zhou, 307–8, 311–13, 315, 331, 333  
     barbarians in Tai4zhou, 312–13  
*Tai-ping Yu Lan*, 229–30  
*Tai-yi Lei-gong Shi* (*Tai-yi* [grand heavenly one] &  
*Lei-gong* [thunder-bolt grand duke's striking  
 rules] *Shi* [divination astrolabes]), 649  
 Tai'an, 329, 343, 421  
 Taihangshan mountain, 6, 320, 327, 329–30, 413–4,  
 417, 453, 417, 453  
 Taiji Academy, 326, 572–73  
 Taikang, 123, 707  
 Taining-jun armies, 117, 126  
 Taiping-xingguo Era, 229–30  
 Taipingzhou, 534, 627  
 Taiyuan, 52–54, 109–10, 119–20, 133–34, 211–13,  
 229, 249–50  
 Taiyuan and Fengxiang armies for countering  
 Nanzhao, 104  
 Taiyuan city defense, 159  
 Taiyuan-wang, King, 164, 173  
 Taizhou, 534, 627, 641–42, 703, 712  
 Taizhou and Zhen1zhou prefectures, 598  
 Taizong, 38–43, 213, 229, 510  
 Taizu, 457  
 Tajiks, 437, 444  
 Talabuga, 493, 504, 688–90  
 Talas Battle, 51, 94  
 Talas River, 51–52, 96, 427, 687

- talisman, 177, 333, 472, 591  
 Taloqan Castle, 433, 437–38, 440, 442–44  
 Taloqan siege, 434–5, 438–39, 440–42  
*tammachis*, 452, 503  
*tan-ma*, 343, 451, 461, 560–61  
 Tan Chang (Qin2 Chang), 247, 629  
 Tan Hongqi, 208  
 Tan Quanbo, 198, 202, 208–9  
 Tan Shen, 576  
 Tan Zhen, 247–8, 256  
 Tan Zixiao, 204  
 Tang Daoxi, 144, 180  
 Tang He, 703, 711, 718, 722  
 Tang He, Liao Yongzhong and Fu Youde, 703  
 Tang Hongfu, 118  
 Tang Jian, Li Shiji and Qin Shubao, 40  
 Tang Jiuzheng, 71, 93  
 Tang Kuofang, 287  
 Tang Liangchen and Pan Zhu, 514  
 Tang Qing, 361, 455–7, 472–3, 480  
     murdered Mongol emissary, 473  
 Tang Que, Wu Min and Geng Nanzhong, 249  
 Tang Shengzong, Lu Zhongheng, Xu Yunlong,  
     Zheng Yuchun, 711  
 Tang Situi, 548–9  
 Tang Yongjian, 623–5  
 Tang Zhen, 629  
 Tang Wenyi, 147, 180  
 Tang Xiaoxin, 564  
 Tang Xiujing, 47, 92–3  
 Tang Yongjian, 623–25  
 Tang Zhen, 629  
 Tang China, 58–59, 74–76, 88–91, 99–101, 109,  
     268, 400  
 Tang China and Tuyuhun, 80  
 Tang China's Guiyi-jun, 101, 240, 268  
     defunct Tang China's Guiyi-jun army  
         garrisons, 267  
     defunct Tang China's Guiyi-jun garrisons, 268  
 Tang dynasty, 15–18, 21, 35–38, 87–88, 105–7,  
     297–99, 365–67  
 Tang dynasty and Li Ling, 623  
 Tang dynasty and Meng2gu3, 309  
 Tang dynasty calendrical and astrological ministers  
     Yuan Tian'gang, 648  
 Tang dynasty Confucian Haan Yu, 663  
 Tang dynasty emperor Gaozu, 36, 294  
 Tang dynasty eunuch Luo Fengxian, 57, 75  
 Tang dynasty General Xue Ren'gui, 675  
 Tang dynasty General Zhang Xun, 552  
 Tang dynasty Guiyi-jun, 264  
 Tang dynasty minister Fang Xuanling, 218  
 Tang dynasty monk Xuan-zang, 218  
 Tang dynasty poet Zhang Ji, 369  
 Tang emissary Wu Cheng'en, 56  
 Tang emperors, 36, 44–46, 65, 97–101, 119–20,  
     124–25, 127, 129–30, 138, 141, 175  
 Tang Emperor Aidi, 65, 137, 141  
 Tang Emperor Aizong, 138  
 Tang Emperor Daizong, 57, 96, 260  
 Tang Emperor Dezong, 58, 75–76, 89, 103  
 Tang Emperor Gaozong, 32, 44, 46, 68–69, 90  
 Tang Emperor Gaozu, 36, 38–39, 68  
 Tang Emperor Jingzong, 76  
 Tang Emperor Li Yuan, 21, 35  
 Tang Emperor Mingzong, 157–58, 171–72, 261–62  
 Tang Emperor Muzong, 60, 76  
 Tang Emperor Ruizong, 49, 69, 72, 93  
 Tang Emperor Shunzong, 59  
 Tang Emperor Suzong, 54, 59, 96, 99  
 Tang Emperor Taizong, 16–18, 36, 38–41, 68,  
     106, 299  
 Tang Emperor Wenzong, 59–60, 76, 100–101  
 Tang Emperor Wuzong, 61, 76, 110, 167  
 Tang Emperor Xianzong, 76, 109  
 Tang Emperor Xizong, 114, 117, 119, 122, 124  
 Tang Emperor Xuan1zong, 76  
 Tang Emperor Xuandi, 400  
 Tang Emperor Xuanzong, 18, 50–51, 71–72, 74, 260,  
     269, 299  
 Tang Emperor Yizong, 91, 112, 115, 391  
 Tang Emperor Zhaozong, 134, 137–38, 179, 184  
 Tang Emperor Zhongzong, 45, 48, 71  
 Tang Emperor Zhongzong's restoration, 71  
 Tang Emperor Zhuangzong, 152, 186  
 Tang Empress Wuhou, 69, 367  
 Tang Gaozu, first emperor, 16  
 Tang General Duan Xiushi, 99  
 Tang General Fan Xichao, 101, 109, 170  
 Tang General Guo Ziyi, 56, 96  
 Tang General Hou Junji, 107  
 Tang General Kang Yanxiao, 181  
 Tang General Li Cheng, 103, 111  
 Tang General Li Jing, 42  
 Tang General Li You, 60  
 Tang General Li Guangbi, 56, 71  
 Tang General Li Guangyan, 109  
 Tang General Li Jing, 90, 107  
 Tang General Lou Shide, 92  
 Tang General Pei Xingjian, 47, 92  
 Tang General Sun Quan, 71  
 Tang General Wang Jun, 94  
 Tang General Xue Rengui, 108  
 Tang General Zhang Xiaosong, 94



- Tang General Zhang Xuanbiao, 94  
 Tang General Zhang Zhongwu, 17, 299  
 Tang generals Shi Wanbao and Sheng Yanshi, 35  
 Tang grand dowager-empress Heh-taihou, 137  
 Tangut ideogrammatic script, 316, 408  
 Tang King Li Dazong, 80  
 Tang minister Wei Zheng, 35  
 Tang-mu-ta, 452  
 Tang nomadic generals, 48, 96  
 Tang nomadic generals Li Kaigu and Luo Wuzheng, 71  
 Tang prince Li Fu2, 113  
 Tang princesses, 42, 71-2, 79, 88, 90  
 Tang Princess Gu'an, 299  
 Tang Princess Jingle, 73  
 Tang Princess Pingyang, 40  
 Tang Princess Wencheng, 90  
 Tang rival Wang Shichong, 37  
 Tang's founder Li Yuan, 24  
 Tang's instigation of Nanzhao for defection, 103  
 Tang's King Huaiyang-wang, 38  
 Tang-wang, King, 36  
 Tanglong Coup, 49  
 Tangmao Qiangs, 80  
 Tangmen, Battle of, 356, 560  
 Tang-minghuang, 194  
 Tang-taizong, 16, 68  
 Tang-Vietnam Butou-lu, 98  
 Tangwute, 613, 664  
 Tangut ancestor Tuoba Shouji, 253  
 Tangut and Huihe, 245, 278  
 Tangut army, 237, 271-72, 276-78, 285-86, 340, 555  
 Tangut army's siege of Fengxiang, 287, 356, 555  
 Tangut capital of Zhongxing-fu, 456  
 Tangut chieftain Li Yuanhao, 404  
 Tangut-Chinese inscription, 270  
 Tangut cities, 143, 261, 283, 318, 409  
 Tangut crown prince Li Chengzhen, 283, 406  
 Tangut deputy defender A-chuo, 454  
 Tangut deputy marshal Gao Linggong, 283, 406  
 Tangut dowager-empress Liang-taihou, 245, 274-77  
 Tangut dowager-empress Liang-tai-hou, 242, 244  
 Tangut emperors, 240-41, 272-74, 276, 279, 281-83  
 Tangut Emperor Chongzong, 270, 279, 281  
 Tangut Emperor Di-xian (Xia-modi/Zhao Xian/Li Xian), 288  
 Tangut Emperor Huanzong, 282, 403, 405  
 Tangut Emperor Jingzong, 240-41, 271, 273  
 Tangut Emperor Li An'quan, 283  
 Tangut Emperor Li Anquan, 283, 318, 409  
 Tangut Emperor Li Yuanhao, 101, 240, 271  
 Tangut Emperor Li Zunxu, 285, 347, 407  
 Tangut Emperor Renzong, 270, 281-82  
 Tangut Emperor Shenzong, 283, 287, 347, 422  
 Tangut Emperor Taizu, 265  
 Tangut Emperor Xia-jing-zong, 240-41, 271-72  
 Tangut Emperor Xia-modi, 287, 360-61, 456  
 Tangut Emperor Xiangzong, 283, 406, 422  
 Tangut Emperor Xianzong, 287, 453  
 Tangut Emperor Yizong, 241-42, 273  
 Tangut Emperor Zunzong, 285, 407  
 Tangut General A-sha-gan-bu, 454  
 Tangut General He-lang-luo, 277  
 Tangut General Ji-la-si-yi, 453  
 Tangut General Li Liangfu, 256, 279  
 Tangut General Weiming-ling-gong, 283, 406  
 Tangut General Weiming-ji, 245, 277-8  
 Tangut Li Sijian, 137, 261  
 Tangut Li Yichao, 153, 171  
 Tangut Li Yiyin, 162, 165, 172-74  
 Tangut Li Yuanhao, 237  
 Tangut ruler Li Chengqing, 269  
 Tangut ruler Li Deming, 239, 267, 269  
 Tangut ruler Li Guangrui, 212, 226, 253, 269  
 Tangut ruler Li Jipeng, 269  
 Tangut ruler Li Jiqian, 233, 266, 269, 273  
 Tangut ruler Li Jiyun, 269  
 Tangut ruler Li Renfu, 171, 269  
 Tangut ruler Li Sijian, 269  
 Tangut ruler Li Yichang, 269  
 Tangut ruler Li Yichao, 269  
 Tangut ruler Li Yiyin, 226, 269, 273  
 Tangut rulers, 267, 269  
 Tangut ruler Zhao Deming, 266  
 Tangut satrap Li Renfu, 153  
 Tangut-Soong Qingli Peace Accord, 274  
 Tangut-Soong relationship, 233, 264  
 Tanguts' Western Xia, 153, 258, 260-1, 267, 270, 287-8, 360, 362, 364, 395, 415, 453, 571, 669  
 Tangut-Tibetan armies, 278-9  
 Tangut Toba Sigong, 226, 253  
 Tangut tribes, 265  
 Tangut wars of Haoshui-chuan and Dingchuan-zhai, 271  
 Tangut Xia Emperor Huanzong, 282, 406  
 Tanguts and Jurchens, 318, 363, 407, 423  
 Tanguts and Mongols, 340  
 Tanguts and Soong, 273, 274  
 Tanguts and Southern Soong, 418  
 Tanguts and Xiao-bolü tribe, 305  
 Tanggu-badu'er, King, 459, 670  
 Tangzhou, 112, 184, 474, 473-74, 537-39, 547-48, 568, 591-92  
 Tanqut-Jurchen rapprochement, 287

Tanshihuai, 7, 10, 12–13, 66, 10, 66, 296, 365  
 Tanshihuai alliance, 10, 66, 296, 365  
 Tanzhou, 166, 187–88, 526, 604–7, 629, 645  
 Tao Daoqi, 180  
 Tao Ya, 190  
 Tao Zongyi, 312, 376, 394, 397, 635  
 Tao-er-he River, 331, 413  
 Tao-he River, 243, 275, 456  
 Tao-jiang River, 676  
 Tao-shui River, 94, 109  
 Taoist Qiu Chuji (Changchun-zhenren), 425, 441–43, 445  
 Taoists, 101, 203, 212, 443  
 Taozhou, 96, 260, 268, 275  
 Tardu, 26–28  
 Tardu/Dianjue, 26–28  
 Tarim Basin, 42, 51, 316, 408  
*tarqa*, 405, 477, 507, 659, 661–62  
 Tartar name, 391  
 Tartars, 370, 375, 377, 391  
 Tashkent, 44, 106, 161, 172  
 Ta-si, 359, 458, 463–64, 478, 572–75  
 Ta-ta-er (Tatar/Tartar), 364-5, 370, 374–75, 384–87, 388–92, 394–95, 408  
     Tatar chieftain Alawudu'er, 385  
 Tatars, 307–8, 312–15, 374–78, 383–87, 389–93, 395  
 Tatars and Mongols, 365, 374–75  
 taxes, 58, 167, 237, 242–43  
     Fan Zhongyan's Qingli Reform, 233, 237  
     Mongol Yuan Zhizhi Reform, 696  
     Toktoghan's reform, 698  
     Wang Anshi's Xining Reform, 233, 242-4, 248  
     Yang Yan's two-taxes reform, 58  
 Tayang-khan, 390, 393–94, 399, 403, 407  
 Tayichi'ut (Tayichi'ud), 316, 374–75, 384, 391-2, 398, 401-2  
 Tayichi'uts (Tayich'uts), 374, 377, 383–85, 388–92, 395, 401–3  
 Ta-yi-er-bu-hua's Mongol, 521  
 Tbilisi, 447–48, 450–52  
*te-jin*, 73, 109, 155, 213  
 Tela, 512, 514–15  
 Te-lao-en (Trau), 502  
*te-mu*, 359, 598, 604, 610–11, 674–75, 680  
 Temu (i.e., Te-mu-er-dai in *Xu Zi-zhi Tong Jian*), 469  
 Temudeke name, 471  
 Temu'erdai, 461, 471, 574  
 Te-mu-er-dai, 469  
 Temujin, 375, 384, 389, 402, 405  
 Temujue, 460–61, 471  
 Temur, 591, 678, 685, 692  
 Temur Buqa, 561, 574  
 Temutai, 461, 561, 574  
 Tengri Desert, 287, 455  
 Teng-wang, King, 23, 44  
 Tengxian, 340, 554  
 Tengzhou, 238, 340, 554, 610–11  
 Ten-surname Huihe, 392  
 Terken Khatun, 433, 436, 447  
 Termez, 430, 433–35, 438  
 Termez Campaign, 438  
 Te-ruo-ke (Tieni) River, 385, 389, 398  
 Teutonic Knights, 494–95  
     French Knights Templar, 494–95  
 Thailand, 81, 677, 680, 685  
 Third Mongol Campaign, 596  
 Thomasbrucke, 497, 499  
 Three-surname Karluks, 392  
 Three-surname Merkits, 392  
 Tian Cheng, 536  
 Tian Chengsi, 56  
 Tian Chongjin, 232  
 Tian Chongrong, 124  
 Tian Congyi, 122  
 Tian Feng, 710  
 Tian Guang'an, 584  
 Tian Junmai, 550  
 Tian Lingzhi, 176  
 Tian Min, 234  
 Tian Rong, 357  
 Tian Rucheng, 517  
 Tian Shen'gong, 56  
 Tian Shizhong, 542  
 Tian Shizhong and Yang Yizhong, 249  
 Tian Xian, 586  
 Tian Xing, 60  
 Tian Xinglong, 578  
 Tian Xiong, 464  
 Tian Yan and Zang Min, 10  
 Tian Yanbin, 152  
 Tian Yin, 10  
 Tian Yingyin, 589, 595-6, 605  
 Tian Yougong, 601  
 Tian Ying's Rebellion, 12  
 Tian Yu, 12  
 Tian Yuanxian, 94  
 Tian Yun, 135, 189-90, 197  
 Tian Zhen-hai (Tchincai), 396, 443, 477, 506-8, 510  
 Tian Zuo, 347, 351-2  
 Tianchang, 117, 534, 575–77, 586  
 Tiande, 112, 205, 302, 305, 400  
 Tiande-jun army, 176  
 Tianjuan, 307–8, 311, 378, 380, 539–40  
 Tianjue, 470, 476

- Tianlin, 208, 516–17  
Tianping-jun, 126  
Tianshui, 220, 241–42, 345–46, 362, 562, 564–66, 578–79  
Tianwan army, 704, 707–8  
Tianwan capital city of Qishui, 706  
Tianwan dynasty, 708, 714  
Tianwan emperor in Wuchang, 714  
Tianwan-jun rebel army, 704, 706  
Tianwu-jun, 142  
Tianxiang, 58, 75, 147, 161  
Tianzuodi, 255–57, 302–3, 305, 539  
Tibet, 38, 80–81, 84, 90–93, 514–16, 663  
Tibetan ancestors, 81, 259  
Tibetan and Chinese languages, 239  
Tibetan and Nepalese army, 90  
Tibetan and Nepalese army attacking Middle India, 90  
Tibetan and Qiangic tents of people, 243, 275  
Tibetan and Qiangic tribes, 550  
Tibetan Buddhism, 80, 663  
Tibetan-Burman elements, 7  
Tibetan chieftains, 163, 229, 236, 239  
Tibetan chieftain Balaji, 265  
Tibetan chieftain Bian-si-bojie, 245, 278  
Tibetan chieftain Dong Zhan, 275  
Tibetan chieftain Si-dun, 267  
Tibetan chieftain Zhepuyoulongbo, 268  
Tibetan founder-king Songzan Ganbu, 163, 266  
Tibetan General Dayan-mang-buzhi, 91  
Tibetan generals Xinuoluo-gongbu and Zhulong-mang-buzhi, 94  
Tibetan Gu-si-luo King Xia-zheng, 245, 278  
Tibetan kings, 90, 92–94, 267, 275  
Tibetan King Chizu-dezan, 76  
Tibetan kingdom, 267  
Tibetan King Gu-si-luo, 267–68  
Tibetan king Qilisulongliezan, 95  
Tibetan King Songtsen Gampo, 42, 80, 89–90  
Tibetan King Tride Songtsen, 74  
Tibetan king Xisheluosa, 279  
Tibetan lamas, 514, 578, 701  
Tibetan Lang-a-zhang, 279  
Tibetan marshal Jumang-buzhi, 93  
Tibetan-Nanzhao army, 103  
Tibetan Plateau, 80, 101, 514, 588  
Tibetan population, 663  
Tibetan Prime Minister Ludongzan, 42  
Tibetan rebellion, 91, 279  
Tibetan royals, 245, 278  
Tibetans, 57–62, 74–76, 86–104, 108–11, 239–40, 266–68  
Tibetans and Arabs, 94  
Tibetans and Karluks, 392, 403  
Tibetans and Ferghana, 94  
Tibetans and Nanzhao, 111  
Tibetans and Tang China, 101  
Tibetans and Tanguts, 116  
Tibetans and Turgesh, 94  
Tibetan scripts, 80, 515  
Tibetan script scroll, 270  
Tibetan-Soong-Jurchen trilateral land, 565  
Tibetan's title for Dalai Lama, 403  
Tibetan-Tangut borderline land, 281  
Tibetan-Tangut fringe area, 243, 275, 456  
Tibetan-Uygur army, 97  
Tibeto-Burman people, 3, 82  
Tiebi, 358, 560  
Tie Fu, 10, 14, 296, 366  
Tiege-huoluchi, 592–93, 596  
Tiege-huoluchi and Whang Dechen, 593–94  
Tiele people, 392  
Tiele rebellion, 41, 68  
Tiemaigai River, 393  
Tiemen, 433, 435, 438, 442  
Tiemu'er-mieli, 429  
Tieni, 385–87, 389, 398, 403  
Tientsin (Tianjin), 70, 77, 329–30, 334  
Tigris River, 521–22  
Timisoara, 497, 499  
Timuchin, 282–83, 314, 375, 384–90, 392–99, 401–3  
Timuchin and brother He-sa-er, 393  
Timuchin and Toghrul, 385, 389–90, 393, 395–96  
Timuchin's clans, 387–88, 398  
Timuchin's father Yisugei, 384, 397, 401  
Timuchin's kinsmen, 386, 390  
Timurlane, 724  
Timur-malik, 429, 436  
Timuzhen-muge, 375  
Tingzhou, 44, 100, 200, 202, 205–6, 642–43, 714–15  
Tingzhou city, 100, 107, 202  
Tisris, 663  
Tisza River, 497, 500  
title, 11–14, 72–78, 108–10, 165–67, 186–87, 261–65  
    brotherly, 103  
    conferred, 186  
    dynastic, 240, 269, 608  
    emperor's, 205, 282, 405  
    grandiose, 231  
    imperial, 646, 668  
    khan's, 78  
    nation's, 376  
    nominal, 223  
    old, 50, 71

- regna, 504  
 saintly, 269  
 special, 663  
 Tob-temur, 696–98  
 Toghachar, 428–29, 431, 435, 437  
 Toghrul, 282, 385–90, 393, 395–98, 404, 406  
 Toghrul's brother Yelikhala, 282, 395  
 Toghrul's son Ilqa Senggun, 390  
 Togh-Temür, 688–89  
 Tohtu, 689–90  
 Tokmok, 42, 47, 92–93, 107–8  
 Toktoghan, 698–99, 702–3, 706–7, 712  
 Tolui, 431, 434–35, 437–40, 444, 456–64, 460–61,  
 464, 477–80, 482–83, 488, 493, 498, 500,  
 509–10, 562–67, 612  
 Tolui and Subetei, 341, 429, 464  
 Tolui and Temujue, 461  
 Tolui sacking Tiancheng-bu, 459  
 Tolui's dowager concubine, 508–9  
 Tonglzhou, 334–35, 586, 598, 640  
 Tong2zhou, 69, 121, 353, 355  
 Tongguan, 285, 341, 359, 419, 465, 479  
 Tong Guan, 248, 278, 280, 305  
 Tong Yuan, 704  
 Tongguan Pass, 52–54, 117–18, 341, 459–61, 463–  
 64, 563  
*Tong-jian Xu Bian*, 313, 372, 375  
 Tongzhou, 206, 359, 530, 534  
 To'oril, 395–96, 477, 510  
 To'pa (Tuoba), 334, 416, 426  
 Toqto'a, 394, 397–98, 403–4, 420–21, 698–99, 712  
 Toqto'a's sons, 404  
 Toquz-Tatar people, 66  
 Toregene, 402, 506–7, 509, 585  
 Torzhok, 486  
 Toyan, 681–83, 707  
 Toyan-temur, 697  
 Toyan/Toghon, 681–84  
 Tran Khanh, 683–84  
 Tran Nhat Duat, 682  
 Transylvania, 488–89, 492, 497, 499  
 Tran Thuyen/Emperor Yingzong, 685  
 Trau, 502–3  
 Triangle & Quartet Wars, 215, 273, 280  
 tribes, 42–43, 296–300, 342–43, 359, 367–77, 389–  
 91, 419, 461, 513, 516–17, 593, 677–79, 724  
 Tribes, Tiele, 12, 25, 28, 41–43, 48, 50, 68, 107–8  
 tribesmen, 146, 238, 395, 401, 705, 707  
 Trogir, 503  
 Ts'ao Ts'ao, 11–13, 66, 296, 298, 365  
 Tsushima, 672, 674  
 Tsushima Island, 672–73  
 Tszu River, 499  
 Tu Ji, 395  
 Tu Yi, 704  
 Tu You, 704  
 Tu-huo-luo (Bactria/Bhukaha), 84, 107  
 Tu-man (Tumats), 344, 419–20, 423  
 Tudan Baijia, 465–67  
 Tudan Changle, 471  
 Tudan Chou'er, 284  
 Tudan Gao, 352  
 Tudan Gonglü, 663–64  
 Tudan Hang (Zhang Seng), 330  
 Tudan Kening, 313, 548  
 Tudan Nanping, 329  
 Tudan Tala, 564  
 Tudan Wudian, 463–65  
 Tudan Yi, 329, 331  
 Tudan Yidu, 472  
 Tuhun-jun mercenary army, 213  
 Tuhun, 89, 91  
*Tuibeit Tu* ([60] {prophecy} sketches with poems,  
 with the last sketch about one follower  
 pushing the forerunner's back, i.e., only  
 moving forward into the future perpetuity  
 and nobody returning to the present from the  
 future), 648–49  
 Tulao-man (Tulao-maan), 646, 678  
 Tula River, 687, 724  
 Tuli Khan, 27-8, 37–39, 41, 43, 68  
 Tul Tegin, 48, 51  
 Tuman-da'er, ethnic-Khitan Mongol General, 638  
 Tumats, 344, 419–20, 423  
 Tumbinai-setsen, 374  
 Tumeds, 419–20, 423  
*tumen*, 25–26, 598, 604, 610–11, 674–75, 680  
 Tumen Khan, 26  
 Tumen River, 296  
 Tungusic people, 18, 297, 316, 366, 368, 381,  
 383, 408  
 Tuo-huan, 402, 681–84, 695, 707  
 Tuo-jiang River, 587, 615  
 Tuo-shui River, 88  
 Tuoba, 14–16, 18, 21, 89, 91, 143, 171, 258–61, 297,  
 365–66, 381, 405  
 Tuoba and Xianbei people, 405  
 Tuoba Chici, 260, 269  
 Tuoba Chongjian, 261, 269  
 Tuoba Dangxiang people, 89  
 Tuoba Qianhui, 261, 269  
 Tuoba Shouji, 260–61, 269  
 Tuoba Sigong, 143, 261, 263, 269  
 Tuoba Sitou, 89, 260, 269

Tuoba Tao, 15, 88, 297, 366  
 Tuoba Wei dynasty, 14–16, 21, 66–67, 88–89, 297–98, 366–67, 611, 662  
 Tuoba Wei Emperor Daowudi, 320, 411  
 Tuoba Wei Emperor Taiwudi, 88  
 Tuoba Wei Emperor Taizu, 8  
 Tuoba Wei Emperor Tuoba Hong, 16  
 Tuoba Xianbei, 8, 13–14, 26–7, 66, 89, 383  
 Turco-Mongol, 375, 383, 392  
 Tuohechu-badulu, 697  
 Tuoheituo (Kerait chieftain), 398  
 Tuoheituo'a (Tuoheituo'er), 389–90, 393–94, 403, 407, 420  
 Tuolichi, 606–7  
 Tuotuo, 283, 619, 699  
 Tuotuo-han, 689  
 Turgesh, 48, 94–95, 108  
 Turkey, 450–51  
 Turkic, 39, 41, 372–73, 383, 394–95  
 Turkic-Khitans mercenary army, 306  
 Turkic-Mongol group, 399  
 Turkic-Mongol Zu-bu, 399  
 Turkic people, 16, 84, 299, 392  
 Turkic tribes, 22, 28, 43, 392, 399, 427, 429  
 Turkic/Uygur/Kirghiz stock, 312, 375  
 Turkish and Mongol tribes, 437  
 Turks, 15–17, 25–29, 35–43, 66–68, 70–73, 365–68  
 Turks and Khitans, 50, 68  
 Turks and Mongols, 84  
 Turks and Uygurs, 66, 69, 389  
 Turks' origin legend, 381  
 Turpan, 42, 106, 108, 264, 266  
 Tursko Battle, 492  
 Tus, 431, 434–35, 440–41, 447  
 Tutaicha'er, 388  
 tutors, imperial, 294, 515, 607, 609, 663  
 Tutuha, 659, 689  
 Tu'ula River, 308, 376, 380, 387, 392–98, 418, 423, 425, 689  
 Tu'ula River assembly, 425  
 Tuva, 369, 399, 619, 689  
 Tuyang city, 699  
 Tuyuhun, 28, 42, 87–91, 97, 99  
 Tuyuhun, 42, 87–91, 93, 161, 259–60, 366  
 Tuyusi, 72  
 Tver, 486–87

## U

Uglich, 486  
 Ugrin, 500  
 Ugu, 306, 311, 380

Uighurs (Uygurs/Uyghurs), 66, 392–93, 403, 405  
 Ukraine people, 491  
 Ulu, David (king of Georgia), 452  
 Ulus, 299, 313, 394, 509  
 uncle Wochijin's tribe, 459, 503  
 universities  
     Alexander V. Maiorov of St. Petersburg State University, 492, 498  
     Beatrix Romhányi of Károli Gáspár Református Egyetem, 498, 501, 504  
     Li Hongjie of Jirin University, 9, 292  
     Haan Jianye of the Chinese People's University, 1  
     József Laszlovszky of Central European University, 498, 501, 504  
     Laszlo Ferenczi of Charles University in Prague, 498, 501, 504  
     Rafal Jaworski of Jan Kochanowski University, 492–3  
     Stephen Pow of Saint Petersburg State University, 498, 501  
     Tomas Somer of Palacky University Olomouc, 487, 491, 494–7, 502  
     Witold Swietoslowski of University of Gdansk, 492–6  
     Roman Hautala of University of Oulu, 492, 498–9  
 uprisings, 246, 255–56, 302, 645, 702  
 Uralic people, 458, 477  
 Ural River, 483, 489  
 Urgenchi, 345, 429, 431–37, 439–41, 449  
 Uriangqadai, 372, 512–13, 515–16, 524–26, 593–96, 604–7  
 Uru'ud, 359, 385, 388–89, 396  
 Uru'ut, 342, 389, 396, 419  
 U-shaped Jinsha-jiang River area, 515  
 usurpation, 40, 115, 123, 203–4  
 usurpation of Yelü Zhilugu's Kara-khitai throne, 307, 398  
 Uygur and Tibetan scripts, 515  
 Uygur cavalries, 97–98  
 Uygur chieftains, 306, 404, 425, 689  
 Uygur founder-king Kutlug Boyla, 404, 415, 423  
 Uygur khanate, 96, 367, 400  
 Uygur King Bi-le-ge, 306, 404, 425  
 Uygur scripts, 271, 371  
 Uygur wife, 153, 171  
 Uygurs, 41–44, 95–100, 264–68, 306, 392–96, 398–401, 403–6, 456  
 Uygurs and Karluks, 95  
 Uygurs and Tanguts, 256

## V

Vahram, Prince, 452  
Valiyan, 441  
Valiyan-Beruwān battles, 445  
Valiyan fort's siege battle, 441, 445  
Varadin Siege, 497, 499  
Vasily (prince of Titus), 487  
vassalage, 41, 85, 87, 107–8, 348, 422  
vassals, 25, 398, 405–6, 426, 663  
Venice, 502–3  
Veszprem, 502  
Vienna, 496, 502  
Vietnam, 22, 63, 74–75, 116–17, 238–39, 675–83, 692  
Vietnam campaign, 683–84  
Vietnamese, 225, 238, 676–77, 681–84  
Vietnamese emperors, 225, 517, 675–78, 682–85  
Vietnamese Emperor Li Rizun, 238  
Vietnamese Emperor Shengzong, 683  
Vietnamese King Zhao-wen-wang, 676–78, 681–82  
Vistula River, 492  
Vladimir, 485–87, 490–91, 493, 504  
Vladimir city, 486, 491  
Vladimir-Suzdal, 450, 487  
Volga, 26, 452, 483, 485–86  
Volga Bulgaria, 450, 483, 505  
Volga Bulgars, 448, 483–84  
Volga River, 433, 449–50, 458, 477, 483–86, 489–90  
Voronezh River, 484, 490  
Vsevolod, 450, 485  
Vsevolodovich, Mikhail, 486, 490

## W

Wagang-jun Army, 32–35, 37  
Wahlstadt, 494–95  
Wakhan river valley, 415  
Wa-la-ding (Varadin), 497  
*wan hu* (*targa*), 284, 288, 359, 591–92, 598, 610, 619, 629, 641, 659, 661–2, 674–75, 680  
Wan-rong barbarians, 81, 259  
Wang An, 586  
Wang Anjie and Wang Jian, 628, 632  
Wang Anshi, 242–46  
Wang Anzhong, 247, 304  
Wang Bin, Feng Wannu, Zhang Dewei, Gao Xingzhong, Cheng Ji and Zhang Shan, 357  
Wang Bing and Zhang Xiaochun, 248  
Wang Bo, 32–3  
Wang Bodang, 33–35  
Wang Bolong, 534  
Wang Canger, 474, 569  
Wang Ceng, 223

Wang Chao, 200–201, 234, 236, 264  
Wang Chongrong (Wang Zhongrong), 64, 118–9, 121, 124, 177  
Wang Chengjie, 181  
Wang Chengye, 52  
Wang Chengzong, 60, 109, 170  
Wang Chongrong, 118–19, 121, 124, 177  
Wang Chongshi, 128, 143, 142, 179  
Wang Chongwen, 207  
Wang Chongyin, 114–115  
Wang Chongying, 131  
Wang Chucun, 124  
Wang Chuqiu, 149–50  
Wang Chuzhi, 142, 144–46, 149, 156  
Wang Cui and Zhao Fu, 573  
Wang Cuodian, 61, 104  
Wang Da and Yu Xing, 613  
Wang Da, 613, 624  
Wang Dacai, 554  
Wang Daguan, 379, 381  
Wang Dao (Liu Yunlang), 149, 156  
Wang Daofu, 646–7  
Wang Daoxi, 180  
Wang Daozhen, 609, 661  
Wang Deming, 149–150  
Wang De, Tian Shizhong and Zhang Zigai, 542  
Wang Deng and Gao Da, 589  
Wang Desu, 609  
Wang Dexin, 589  
Wang Dingbao, 209  
Wang Dingfu, 286  
Wang Du, 156  
Wang Duo, 118–20, 196  
Wang E3, 371  
Wang E4, 349–50, 467, 475, 478  
Wang En, 277–8  
Wang Er, 109  
Wang Fan, 192  
Wang Fangyi, 47, 92  
Wang Fu, 10, 616, 622, 677  
Wang Fu2, 347, 352, 421, 424  
Wang Fu3, 246, 248, 529  
Wang Fuyou, 607  
Wang Gan, 359  
Wang Gang, 539, 545  
Wang Gangzhong, 643  
Wang Gao, Wang Kan and Yu Yanyu, 566  
Wang Gong, 131  
Wang Gongzuo, 286, 353  
Wang Gui, 40, 130, 538–39, 541–2  
Wang Guizhang and Ma Gongru, 62  
Wang Guochang, 590

- Wang Guowei, 84, 309–12, 369, 374–75, 379–80  
 Wang Haibin, 94  
 Wang Hanchen, 567, 581  
 Wang Hao, 95  
 Wang He2, 354  
 Wang Hong, 169, 221  
 Wang Hongli, 112  
 Wang Huaixin, 267  
 Wang Hui, 73, 120, 158  
 Wang Ji (Wang Jil), 465, 474, 568–69, 577  
 Wang Ji, Wei Zhao and Chong Pu, 279  
 Wang Ji (Wang Jil)'s trip and death, 577  
 Wang Jian, 144, 153, 175–81, 184–85, 524–25, 585–88, 600–602  
 Wang Jian and Zhu Wen, 138  
 Wang Jian4, 128, 175  
 Wang Jianfeng, 207  
 Wang Jianzhao, 183–84  
 Wang Jianzhao, Gu Yanhui and Tuoba Sijing, 177  
 Wang Jichang and Huang Renfeng, 206  
 Wang Jicheng, 205-6  
 Wang Ji'en, 228  
 Wang Jin, 578  
 Wang Jin4, 347  
 Wang Jingchong (Wang Jing), 124, 165, 219  
 Wang Jingkui, 188  
 Wang Jingren (Wang Maozhang), 135, 143–45, 189, 191–92  
 Wang Jingwu, 116, 118–20  
 Wang Jinqing, 148, 369  
 Wang Jipeng, 204  
 Wang Jirou, 204  
 Wang Jitao, 204  
 Wang Jixun, 205-6  
 Wang Jiye, 205  
 Wang Jizhong, 234  
 Wang Jufang, 62  
 Wang Jun, 14, 94, 166, 233  
 Wang Jun4, 162, 543  
 Wang Junchuo, 51, 94  
 Wang Junfu, 533  
 Wang Junhou and Wang Jian, 515  
 Wang Junkuo, 39-40  
 Wang Ke, 131  
 Wang Kui, 188, 586  
 Wang Kui and Zhou Xingfeng, 187–88, 225  
 Wang Kuo, 337  
 Wang Li (Tangut Wang Lizhi), 288  
 Wang Li, 554  
 Wang Li4, 602  
 Wang Lian, 582  
 Wang Liangchen, 343  
 Wang Liao, 112, 208  
 Wang Lingwu, 120  
 Wang Lizhen, 282  
 Wang Lizhi, 288  
 Wang Lun, 540  
 Wang Lüzheng, 584  
 Wang Man4, 572  
 Wang Mei (of the Tang dynasty), 118  
 Wang Mei, Du Rou and Yuan Shixin, 592  
 Wang Min, 245, 277-9, 573  
 Wang Ming, 195  
 Wang Maozhang (Wang Jingren), 135, 143, 145, 189–92  
 Wang Nande, 54  
 Wang Pan, 359, 470, 476, 561, 609  
 Wang Ping, 562  
 Wang Pu, and Fan Zhi, 166  
 Wang Qi, 202  
 Wang Qian, 23-4  
 Wang Qing, Tian Rong, Li Gui, Wang Bin, 357  
 Wang Qinruo, Yang Yi, Sun Shi and Xia Song, 230  
 Wang Qingruo, 235  
 Wang Quan, 545, 703-5  
 Wang Quanbin, 182–83, 223  
 Wang Renda and Wang Jixiong, 203  
 Wang Ren'gong, 29  
 Wang Renshan, 182  
 Wang Rong, 125, 127, 130–31, 144–46, 149–50  
 Wang Rongzu, 332, 458, 477, 669–71  
 Wang Rui, 564  
 Wang Shao, 243, 245, 275, 456  
 Wang Shan of the 11<sup>th</sup>-12<sup>th</sup> centuries, 245, 278-9  
 Wang Shan, 531-2, 625  
 Wang Shan of the 14<sup>th</sup> century, 704  
 Wang Shan-er, 473, 475  
 Wang Shen, 236  
 Wang Shenchao (Wang Xinchun/Wang Chao), 200  
 Wang Shenqi, 221–23  
 Wang Shenzhi, 138, 175, 199–202  
 Wang Shi, 62  
 Wang Shichang, 638  
 Wang Shicheng, 710  
 Wang Shichong, 29, 33–35, 37  
 Wang Shifan, 131, 135  
 Wang Shijie, 632, 643  
 Wang Shilong and Geng Jing, 546  
 Wang Shimin, 642  
 Wang Shiqiang, 642  
 Wang Shixiu, 544  
 Wang Shiyong, 636  
 Wang Shiyong and Xu Bingzhe, 529  
 Wang Shizhen, 631

Wang Shoucheng, 60-1  
 Wang Shouxin, 622  
 Wang Shuwen, Wang Pi, Wei Zhiyi, Haan Tai, Haan Ye, Liu Zongyuan, Liu Yuxi, Chen Jian, Ling Zhun, Cheng Yi, 59  
 Wang Shu4, 530, 535, 539-40  
 Wang Shunchen, 279  
 Wang Si, 622  
 Wang Sitong, 157-59  
 Wang Suo, 531  
 Wang Tan, 145, 148, 191  
 Wang Ting, 669-70  
 Wang Tingchou, 60  
 Wang Tingmei, 202  
 Wang Tingyu, 351  
 Wang Wan'gan, Shi Yanchao and Heh Hui, 166  
 Wang Wanqing and Zhao Zhu, 478  
 Wang Wei of the Soong dynasty, 581, 722  
 Wang Wei and Soong Lian, 373  
 Wang Weihai, 318  
 Wang Wen, 239, 268  
 Wang Wendu, 44  
 Wang Wen'gan and Yan Zhongfan, 610  
 Wang Wenhui, 628  
 Wang Wentong, 371, 607, 657, 660-61  
 Wang Wenzhen, 277  
 Wang Wo (Wang Zhongze), 362  
 Wang Wu, 537  
 Wang Xi, 318, 409  
 Wang Xianlzhil, 234  
 Wang Xianqian, 45  
 Wang Xianzhi, 63, 105, 112-13, 115  
 Wang Xianzhi and Huang Chao rebellion, 131, 170, 183, 213  
 Wang Xianlzhil, 234  
 Wang Xiang, 585  
 Wang Xiaobo, 233  
 Wang Xiaojie, 47, 70, 93  
 Wang Xiaolian, 153  
 Wang Xie, 530, 534  
 Wang Xin, 599  
 Wang Xinchun/Wang Chao, 200  
 Wang Xingben (Wang Hangben), 36  
 Wang Xingshen and Li Cunzhang, 113  
 Wang Xingyu, 124, 130-31, 152, 178  
 Wang Xiong, 8, 12-13  
 Wang Xiyu, 189  
 Wang Xu, 118, 200  
 Wang Xuan, 547, 581, 718  
 Wang Xuance, 90  
 Wang Xun, 332, 665  
 Wang Yan, 166, 181, 240, 272, 531, 537, 541, 547  
 Wang Yan/Emperor Modi, 180  
 Wang Yanbing, 202-3  
 Wang Yanbing and Wang Jixiong, 203  
 Wang Yanchao, 223  
 Wang Yanfu, 201  
 Wang Yanhan, 202-3  
 Wang Yanhui, 338  
 Wang Yanjun, 203  
 Wang Yanqian, 117  
 Wang Yanqiu, 156  
 Wang Yanquan and Dai Keshi, 111  
 Wang Yansheng, 222-3  
 Wang Yanwei, 192  
 Wang Yanxi, 199, 204-5  
 Wang Yanxian, 381  
 Wang Yanyi, 204-5  
 Wang Yanzhang, 144, 150-51  
 Wang Yanzhang and Duan Ning, 150-51  
 Wang Yanzheng, 199, 204-6  
 Wang Yanzhou, 220  
 Wang Yanzhu, Gao Yue, Gao Yuan, 193  
 Wang Yi, 554, 612, 624, 665  
 Wang Yin, 134, 137, 167  
 Wang Yinglin, 599  
 Wang Yishen, 561  
 Wang Yong, 273  
 Wang Yong (Mongol general), 645  
 Wang You, 472  
 Wang Youdao, 104  
 Wang Youzhi, 545  
 Wang Youzhong, 566  
 Wang Yu, 98, 149, 151, 228, 583  
 Wang Yu2, 644  
 Wang Yuan, 532  
 Wang Yuanshan, 592  
 Wang Yue, 666, 693, 696  
 Wang Yue4 and Chen Yizhong, 630  
 Wang Yun, 185, 609  
 Wang Yun4, 312, 376, 666  
 Wang Zai, 110  
 Wang Zaixing, Li Gui, Ding Jin, Ma Gao, 531  
 Wang Zan, 151  
 Wang Zhang, 165, 211, 633  
 Wang Zhaoyuan, 182  
 Wang Zhe, 612  
 Wang Zhengheng, 705  
 Wang Zhenglun, 238  
 Wang Zhong, 597  
 Wang Zhongbao, 271  
 Wang Zhongfu and Pang Xun, 111  
 Wang Zhongrong, 121, 124  
 Wang Zhongxian, 64, 134



- Wang Zhongze, Diao Bi and Bai Hua, 563  
Wang Zhongzheng, 275-6  
Wang Zhun, 670  
Wang Zhen, Yang-jiezhige, and Yang Miaozen, 473  
Wang Zhi, 331,  
Wang Zhi (Koryo king), 671  
Wang Zi, 578-79  
Wang Zichang, 353  
Wang Zongbi, 153, 177, 181  
Wang Zongbo, 144, 147, 178-80, 184  
Wang Zongchou, 180  
Wang Zongdi, 179  
Wang Zongfan, Wang Zongbo and Wang Zongshou, 180  
Wang Zonghe and Tang Daoxi, 144  
Wang Zongji, 180  
Wang Zongkan and Wang Zongbi, 177  
Wang Zonglang, 180  
Wang Zongshao, 147  
Wang Zongshi and Ji Yuanshi, 62  
Wang Zongwan, 179-80  
Wang Zongyi, 180  
Wang Zongyan, 180  
Wang Zongyou, Wang Zonghe and Tang Daoxi, 144  
Wang Zongyuan, 176, 178, 184  
Wang Zuo, 597  
Wang-baobao, 699, 710, 713, 717-18, 720-21, 723  
Wang-han Toghrul, 393, 397  
Wangdu, 234  
Wanggu, 390, 393, 396, 399, 419  
Wannu, Dong-xia emperor puxian, 458, 417, 477-78, 563  
Wanquan, 319, 323, 410-11  
Wanshanbu, 619-20  
Wanyan, 281, 300, 310, 315, 378  
Wanyan Aguda, 247, 255-56, 300-301, 378  
Wanyan Aling, 338, 345  
Wanyan An'guo, 312-14, 317  
Wanyan Baisa, 285, 466-68  
Wanyan Chang, 308-9, 334, 378, 380, 531, 533, 535, 538-40  
Wanyan Cheng, 248, 303, 378, 384  
Wanyan Chengli, 284-86, 340, 346, 555  
Wanyan Chengyu, 318-19, 321-23, 409-12  
Wanyan Chenheshang, 362, 459-61, 464, 503  
Wanyan Chenheshang's Zhongxiao-jun Army, 360, 460  
Wanyan Chongxi, 463-65, 480  
Wanyan Dalai, 308-9, 378-80, 540  
Wanyan Fushou, 545-46  
Wanyan Fuxing, 331, 334, 415-16  
Wanyan Gang, 322, 328-29, 551-52  
Wanyan Gou'er, 284-85  
Wanyan Heda, 286, 353, 355, 459-64, 563-64  
Wanyan Heda and Yila Pu'a, 360, 462, 464, 564  
Wanyan Hezhou, 361, 456  
Wanyan Husha, 318-19, 322, 409-10, 412  
Wanyan Hushahu, 318-19, 322, 409  
Wanyan Huxiehu, 467  
Wanyan Jiuji, 318, 323, 409, 411  
Wanyan Liang, 281, 317, 408, 544-46  
Wanyan Loushi, 250, 301, 303, 305, 533  
Wanyan Majin, 458  
Wanyan Naneshen, 458  
Wanyan Nushen, 469  
Wanyan Qijin, 321-22  
Wanyan Qingshannu, 284-86, 340, 346, 461, 463, 555  
Wanyan Saibu, 284-5, 320, 345  
Wanyan Salihe, 530-1, 535-37, 540  
Wanyan Shizhu, 614  
Wanyan Silie, 467  
Wanyan Tianji, 325  
Wanyan Wolibu, 247-48, 279  
Wanyan Wuyashu, 255, 300  
Wanyan Wuzhu, 332, 530  
Wanyan Xiang, 310, 313-16  
Wanyan Xiyin, 250-51, 303, 308-9, 316, 380  
Wanyan Xun, 328-29, 414, 475, 553  
Wanyan Yong, 317, 408, 475, 545-46  
Wanyan Yongji, 317, 408, 414, 552  
Wanyan Yu, 337, 346  
Wanyan Yun, 313-14, 345, 554  
Wanyan Zhongde, 356-57, 467, 471, 475  
Wanyan Zongbi, 307-10, 378-81, 531, 533-34, 536-42  
Wanyan Zongbi's Wuna-shui River operation, 399  
Wanyan Zonggan, 308, 380, 540  
Wanyan Zonghan, 248-49, 255, 300, 303, 308  
Wanyan Zonghao, 312, 315, 381  
Wanyan Zongjuan, 308, 380, 540  
Wanyan Zongpan, 308, 310, 380, 540  
Wanyan Zongwang, 247-48, 250-51, 303-4  
Wanzhou, 178-80, 184, 186, 344, 348, 584  
Waqiao-guan, 154, 169, 174, 222, 227, 234, 254  
warfare, 217, 227-28, 257, 476, 571  
Wuxiu-guan (war termination) pass, 580  
Wahlstadt Battle, 495  
Wayan Heda, 463-64, 479, 567  
*Wei Shu*, 8, 291  
Wei Ai, 585  
Wei Baoheng, 63  
Wei Bo and Gao Song, 49  
Wei Boyu, 56

- Wei Cen, 193, 207  
 Wei Changsheng, 678  
 Wei Chou, 52  
 Wei Chou (Tuhun-jun mercenary army's commander), 213  
 Wei Chu, 646, 678  
 Wei Congjian and Liang Shouqian, 60  
 Wei Conglang, 205  
 Wei Fan, 471  
 Wei Gao, 103–4  
 Wei Huang, 178  
 Wei Jiao, 549  
 Wei Jin, 34  
 Wei Jinn, 104  
 Wei Jing, 559  
 Wei Jubao, 236, 265  
 Wei Ke, 52  
 Wei Liangchen, 543  
 Wei Liaoweng, 552  
 Wei Minghe, 57  
 Wei Pushan, 92  
 Wei Qian, 191  
 Wei Quan and Jia Hezhong, 548  
 Wei Quanfeng, 191, 201  
 Wei Renpu, 166, 222  
 Wei Rui, Wei Bo and Gao Song, 49  
 Wei Sheng, 543–44, 548–49  
 Wei Tong, 239, 268  
 Wei Wen, 49  
 Wei Xiaokuan, 23–24  
 Wei Xiu, 200  
 Wei Xuanzhen, 45  
 Wei Yingwu, Liu Yuxi, Haan Yu, Liu Zongyuan, Yuan Zhen, Bai Juyi, Yuan Shen and Li Heh, 179  
 Wei Yongshou, 545–6  
 Wei Yuan, 590  
 Wei Zhao, 279  
 Wei Zhaodu, 131, 178  
 Wei Zhen, 130  
 Wei Zheng, 36, 39–40  
 Wei Zhiyi, 59  
 Wei Zhuang, 182  
 Wei Zou, 207  
 Wei-shui River, 2, 4–5, 121, 536–37, 540  
 Wei-wu-er/Huigu/Huihe/Uygurs, 428  
 Wei1zhou, 311, 358, 399, 598  
 Wei2zhou, 245, 277, 329, 343  
 Wei2zhou, 150  
 Wei4zhou, 359–60, 362, 462, 464, 468–69  
 Wei4zhou, 480, 563  
 Weibo, 58, 60–61, 75–76, 120, 124–25, 144–47, 149–50, 154  
 Weimingling-gong, 287, 360, 455  
 Weining, 319–20, 413  
 Weisaiyin-buhua, 710, 718, 720  
 Weishao-wang, Jurchen king (emperor), 317, 408  
 Weizhou, 95–96, 144–45, 165, 240, 272, 343–44  
 Weizhou and Hua2zhou, 145  
 Welkopole, 494–95  
 Wen Caiyu, 645  
 Wen Tianxiang, 630–33, 635, 640, 642–43, 645–48, 667–68, 673  
     title of Duke Lulingjun-gong, 648, 673  
 Wen Tianxiang and Zhang Shijie, 633, 668  
 Wen Wujian, 178, 184  
 Wen Yonggui, 626  
 Wen Zhang, 62  
 Wen Zhaotu, 149  
 Wen Zhongde, 634  
 Wen-shui River, 151  
*Wen-yuan Ying-hua* (blossoming flower of the literary garden), 230  
 Wen1zhou, 534, 633, 642  
 Wen2xiang, 459–60  
 Wen2zhou, 582  
 Wenbohan-gebu'ai, 458, 477  
 Wenxiang, 359, 463, 465  
 Wenyong, 672  
 Wenzhou, 197–98, 201, 536–37, 668, 722  
 western campaign, 415–16, 418, 420–21, 427–28, 436–37, 482–83  
 Western Corridor, 57–59, 98–101, 264, 266–68, 403–4, 454–55  
 western Er-he River, 71  
 Western Jinn Emperor Huidi, 85  
 Western Jinn Emperor Mindi, 85  
 Western Kara-khanid, 307, 425  
 Western Khanate, 27, 42, 41, 44, 90, 107  
 Western Khitan Liao, 395, 397  
 Western Khitay, 305, 405, 428  
 Western Liao, 253, 303, 393–95, 403, 405–7  
 Western Liao Dynasty, 316, 344, 408, 423  
 Western Liao-he River, 8, 16, 78  
 Western Liao River, 67  
 Western Qiangic people, 81, 87, 89, 259  
 Western Turkic Khanate, 26–28, 106–8, 400  
 Western Turkic Khan Datou, 24, 27–28  
 Western Turks, 27–28, 42, 44, 92, 106–8, 170  
 Western Turks' origin, 148, 170  
 Western Wei dynasty, 15, 21, 24  
 Western Wei Emperor Feidi, 25  
 Western Wei Emperor Wendi, 25

- Western Xia, 217, 226–28, 257–58, 263–64, 272, 360–61
- Western Xia Dynasty, 236, 259
- Western Xianbei, 8, 12–14, 67
- Western Xianbei people, 259
- Western Xia people, 258
- Western Yellow River Bend, 5, 7, 258, 262, 264
- Western Zhou, 3–4, 85–86, 195, 617, 666
- West Lake, 197, 202, 617, 666
- West Liao-he River, 78
- Whang Boyan, 250
- Whang Dayuan, 681
- Whang Dechen, 515, 524–25, 588–90, 592–94, 596–97, 599–602, 636–38
- Whang Dechen's Mongol, 588-9, 594, 600–601, 658
- Whang Liangchen and Bai-zhu's Mongol, 637
- Whang Lixin, 622–23, 626
- Whang Sanlang, 284
- Whang Shixian, 356–57, 578–79, 582–85
- Whang Tong, Cheng Guosheng and Yu Mao, 704
- Whang Weihe, 686
- Whang Weili, 594
- Whang Weiliang, 658
- Whang Weizheng, 658
- Whang Yuanliang, 635
- White Lotus Society, 701–2
- Baiteng-jiang (Bach Dang white vine) river, 210
- Wiener Neustadt, 502
- Yehuling (wild fox ridge), 322–23, 337, 409–11
- Wo-chi-jin, 330
- Wokuotai, 319–20, 325–26, 330, 409, 412
- Wolebu'erke, 447, 483–84
- Wo-luo-hai, 283, 406
- Wo-luo-hai-cheng, 283, 406
- Wo-tuo-luo-er, 430
- Wo-za-er, 405
- Wozhen Nayen, followed Mongol General, 480
- Wroclaw, 493–96
- Wu Chao, 545
- Wu Cheng'en, 56
- Wu Chengyi, 205
- Wu Congjian, 156
- Wu Chongxun, 48–49
- Wu Chongyin, 60
- Wu Chucai, 630, 640, 642
- Wu Er, 238
- Wu Gong, 545, 547
- Wu Congjian, 156
- Wu Ge, 251
- Wu Guang, 203
- Wu Guangcheng, 258, 269, 277, 453
- Wu Gui, 349, 352
- Wu Heida, 35
- Wu Hao, 240, 269
- Wu Jian, 199, 633-5
- Wu Jie, 246–47, 256, 533, 535–40
- Wu Jiming, 629
- Wu Jing, 605
- Wu Jixun, 265
- Wu Ju, 545
- Wu Jun, 530, 640, 643
- Wu Keqin, 73
- Wu Lin, 536–37, 543, 545–46, 549, 551–52
- Wu Lingxun, 56
- Wu Liang Wu Zhen, Hua Yun, Chen De, Gu Shi, Fei Ju, 711
- Wu Lun (Tang King Xiang-wang/Li Dan), 49
- Wu Meng, 275
- Wu Min, Tang Que and Geng Nanzhong, 249
- Wu Qi, 82
- Wu Qian, 576, 587, 594, 604
- Wu Qianyu, 157
- Wu Quan, 209–10, 684
- Wu Quanxu, 120
- Wu Renchen, 166, 182
- Wu Sansi, 45, 48–49, 69
- Wu Shaoyang, 60
- Wu Shijiang, 541
- Wu Shouqi, 223
- Wu Tao, 135, 190
- Wu Tianxi, 259, 568
- Wu Ting, 551
- Wu Tingzuo, 162
- Wu Wang, 623
- Wu Wanwu, 675
- Wu Weiye, 252
- Wu Wen, 199
- Wu Xi, 318, 538, 550-2
- Wu Xian, 343–44, 346, 349, 352, 354–55, 358–60, 424, 453, 459, 462–64, 467, 471, 473, 480, 560, 562, 567–69, 601
- Wu Xingde, 223
- Wu Xingzhen, 204
- Wu Xiu, Zhang Rongshi and Li Heng, 629
- Wu Yanji, 45-6
- Wu Yizong, 70
- Wu Youren, 721
- Wu Yanrou, 210
- Wu Ying, 203
- Wu Youyi, 69–70
- Wu Yuan, 594
- Wu Yuanheng, Pei Du and Li Jifu, 61
- Wu Yuanji, 60, 110, 170
- Wu Yue, 241

Wu Zetian (Wu Zhao), 36, 46–48, 92  
 Wu Zhao, 36, 45  
 Wu Ze, 355  
 Wu Zhan, 532  
 Wu Zhen, 711, 718  
 Wu Zheng, 345–6, 554, 556  
 Wu Zhidou, 685  
 Wu Zhiyi, 73  
 Wu2zhou, 207, 210  
 Wu3zhou, 130, 246, 256, 279–80, 305, 319–20, 325, 412  
 Wu3zhou of Posterior Jinn, 303  
 Wu4zhou, 117, 201, 208, 642  
 Wu'an, 125, 188, 196, 702  
 Wuchang, 538, 540, 598, 705–7, 713–14  
 Wu-er-gu-na-Su-le-tan, 520–21  
 Wu-er-gu-na sultan, 520–21  
 Wuer-jimulun River and Xi-lamulun, 78  
 Wugulun-qingshou, 285, 334, 340, 345, 419, 554  
 Wugunai, 300  
 Wu-guo, 191–2, 248, 300  
 Wu-guo and Southern Tang, 162  
 Wu-guo king and Xu Wen, 191  
 Wu-guo state, 146, 162, 191–92  
 Wu-gu people, 311  
 Wu-gu tribe, 311, 380  
 Wuhuan, 7–13, 16, 66, 296–97, 365–66  
 Wuhuan barbarians, 7, 9–12, 16  
 Wuhuan campaign, 7, 11  
 Wuhuan chieftains, 10–12  
 Wuhuan households, 11, 296  
 Wuji, 15, 17–18, 124, 291–92, 296–98  
 Wujie, 400  
 Wuji land, 18, 299  
 Wuji people, 17, 291, 296–97  
 Wuji tribes, 16, 18, 298–99  
 Wula-buhua, 689  
 Wulhai-cheng, 283, 406  
 Wulanda, 321–22  
 Wulanheda, 517, 594, 676  
 Wuliangha, 370, 372, 724  
 Wulianghetai, 509, 512, 515–16, 593–96, 606–7  
 Wuliang-hetai, 593–94  
 Wulianghetai, 512–13  
 Wu-li-ke, 71–72  
 Wulin Dahui, 307  
 Wu-lu-gu, 311  
 Wu-lu-hui River, 395  
 Wuluhui-Shilianzhen River, 390, 395  
 Wumeng, 516, 593, 640, 678, 722  
 Wu-ma-er, 682–84  
 Wu-man, 98, 516–17  
 Wuna-shui River, 307–8, 311, 316, 380  
 Wuping, 186–88, 210, 224, 344  
 Wushabu Wushabu, 318–9, 409–11  
 Wu-sha-bu and Hui4he-bu battles, 412  
 Wutaishan Mountain, 692  
 Wutuwan-wugu, 311–12  
 Wu-wang, King, 55, 189, 191–92, 197, 710, 717  
 Wuxiu-guan pass, 346, 556, 558, 562, 564–66, 580–81  
 Wuyi-jun, 328  
 Wuyong-du army, 196  
 Wuyue, 164, 173, 226, 253  
 Wu-Yue army, 192, 198–200, 202, 205, 207  
 Wu-Yue-guo-wang, King, 199–200  
 Wu-Yue state, 189, 191–93, 196–98, 202–4, 206–7  
 Wuyueying, 319, 410–11  
 Wuzhong state, 295  
 Wuzhou, 57, 96, 284  
 Wu-Zhou dynasty, 45–46, 49, 69, 71  
 Wu-Zhou dynasty's Shenlong Era, 47  
 Wu-Zhou King Liang-wang, 45  
 Wuzong, 61–62, 664, 693–94

## X

Xar Moron, 16, 78, 291  
 Xi Zhongxin, 124, 126–6  
 Xilzhou, 71, 474–75, 570, 575–76  
 Xil-zhou, 76, 107–9, 239, 243  
 Xilzhou and Caizhou, 575–76  
 Xi2zhou, 166, 223, 330, 343–44  
 Xia2zhou, 180, 183, 186, 705–6  
 Xia2-zhou campaigns, 620  
 Xia-a-er-an, 447  
 Xia Emperor Jingzong, 269  
 Xia Chenghao, 234  
 Xia Dajie, 530  
 Xia Gao, 574  
 Xia Gui, 607, 610–1, 614–16, 618–19, 622–24, 627, 634–35  
 Xia Jing, 643  
 Xia Quan, 338–39, 356, 557, 559, 561  
 Xia Luqi, 151, 157  
 Xia She, 12  
 Xia Shicai, 633  
 Xia Song (Xia Soong), 230, 237, 240–41, 271–72, 620–1  
 Xia Song (Xia Soong), 230, 237, 240–41, 271–72, 621  
 Xia Xun, 220  
 Xia Yong and Zhao Xing, 581  
 Xia Yu, 10

Xia-Shang dynasties, 259  
 Xia-Shang-Zhou dynasties, 84  
 Xian2zhou, 298, 301  
 Xianbei, 7–14, 21–22, 66–67, 85, 259, 296–97, 365–66, 368–69  
 Xianbei alliance, 7–8, 10, 13, 66, 296  
 Xianbei and Turks, 40  
 Xianbei and Wuhuan Mountains, 9, 66, 296  
 Xianbei and Wuhuan, 9, 67, 83, 296  
 Xianbei barbarians, 10, 14, 87, 171  
 Xianbei chieftains, 7, 10, 12, 66, 365  
 Xianbei name, 59  
 Xianbei people, 9, 12, 14, 259  
     early Eastern, 14  
     shaved-head, 381  
 Xianbei-Wuhuan-Tuoba territories, 15, 297, 366  
 Xiang Daheng, 722  
 Xiang Pulü, 704  
 Xiang Shibi, 587, 597, 601, 606–8  
 Xiang Zimin, 534  
 Xiang-jiang River, 115, 116  
 Xiang-wang, King, 49, 124–25  
 Xiang-wu-su, 641  
*xiangkun*, 159, 374, 383, 454  
 Xiangxiong, 80, 90  
 Xiangyang, 471, 480-1, 538, 545, 568, 572–73, 614, 616–26, 666–67, 704–6  
 Xiangyang and Fancheng, 573, 575, 589, 619–20, 622  
 Xiangyang and Fancheng forts and barracks, 589  
 Xiangyang and Han-shui River, 462, 577  
 Xiangyang-Fancheng defense, 620, 635  
 Xiangyang-fu, 537–38, 568, 589, 617  
 Xiangyang siege battle, 523  
 Xiangyatan, 191  
 Xiangzhou, 23, 125, 239, 249–50, 329–30, 531–32  
 Xianren-guan Pass, 535–37, 551-52, 556, 562, 564-66, 579–80  
 Xiantian, 49  
 Xianyou, 716  
 Xianyu Fu, 11-2  
 Xianyu Wei, 584  
 Xianyu Zhongtong, 74, 98, 104, 110-1  
 Xian-yun barbarians, 3–4, 368  
 Xianzhi Khan, 76  
 Xi'an-zhou, 250, 282  
 Xianzhou, 333, 339  
 Xi'an-zhou and Tiandu-zhai forts, 278  
 Xiao Bodie, 335  
 Xiao Baoxian, 255, 301  
 Xiao Chuo, 226, 231, 253, 311  
 Xiao Dalin, 233–35  
 Xiao Dechong, 278  
 Xiao Fengxian, 303  
 Xiao Fu and Duan Wenchang, 60  
 Xiao Jiong, 95  
 Xiao Jiyuan, 233  
 Xiao Jun, 473  
 Xiao Qi, 547  
 Xiao Qi, Pucha-tumu and Da-zhou-ren's turncoat  
     Jurchen army, 547  
 Xiao Qing, 251, 309  
 Xiao Siwen (Xiao Shouxing), 226, 253  
 Xiao Sixian, 255, 301  
 Xiao Siye, 44  
 Xiao Song, 94  
 Xiao Xiala and Yelü Oulisi, 77  
 Xiao Yi, 209, 543  
 Xiao Youliang, 564  
 Xiao Yu, 40  
 Xiao Yujue, 166  
 Xiao Zhe and Fan Tong, 539  
 Xiao Zhizhong, 49  
 Xiao Zhonggong, 250  
 Xiao-de-fei, 303  
 Xiao-guan Pass, 109, 170  
 Xiao-hu-lu people, 305  
 Xiao-taihou, 226–27, 231–33, 253, 273  
 Xiao-taihou and Haan Derang, 231–32  
 Xiao-taihou and Khitan Emperor Yelü Longxu, 232  
 Xiao-Bo-lü, 94  
 Xiazhou, 41, 43, 103–4, 143–44, 171–72, 260–63, 276–77, 285-6, 585  
 Xiazhou and Yinzhou prefectures, 261  
 Xiazhou defense, 143, 261  
 Xi-bi-e-da, 283, 406  
 Xibuye-shi clan name, 80  
 Xichang, 71, 99, 515, 636  
 Xichong, 187  
 Xichuan, 99, 103, 153–54, 568  
 Xi-chuan, 105, 113, 117, 176, 636  
 Xichuan satrap office, 61, 104  
 Xidu-shui River, 463  
 Xie Bigong, 716  
 Xie Cheng, 604, 610, 659, 711  
 Xie Cheng'en, 176  
 Xie Fangde, 628, 648, 665  
 Xie Fangshu, 591  
 Xie Gui, 615, 646  
 Xie Hongyong, 629  
 Xie Huang, 158  
 Xie Ji, 516–17, 605  
 Xieli Khan, 37–43, 68, 107  
 Xie Liang, 530  
 Xie Muhuan, 406

Xie Ruji, 619, 625  
 Xie Qing, 647  
 Xie Tang, 633, 635  
 Xie Tunan, 514  
 Xie Wushi, 645  
 Xie Xuan, 658  
 Xie Yanbin, 195  
 Xie Yingfu, 718  
 Xie-guini, 12–13  
 Xie-che-bie-ji, 401  
 Xieli Khan, 38  
 Xihezhou, 346, 361–62, 554, 556, 562, 564–66  
 Xi-jing, 284–85, 319–21, 326–28, 410–11, 413, 421–  
 22, 477, 608, 657  
 Xikang, 288  
 Xi-lamulun (Xi-lamu-he) River, 16, 78, 303  
 Xiliang, 236, 265, 285, 657  
 Xi-liang, 285, 347, 422  
 Xiliang-fu, 287, 360, 454  
 Xin Qiji, 196, 546–547  
 Xin Qizong, 535  
 Xin Yunjing, 97  
 Xin Zan, 547  
*Xin Shi*, 628, 631–33, 640, 642, 644, 664, 675  
*Xin Tang Shu*, 7–8, 15–17, 50–51, 62–63, 67, 87, 90,  
 105–6, 108, 112, 242, 297–98, 308, 366–67,  
 369, 391  
*Xin Wu-dai Shi*, 106, 185, 209, 237, 242, 308,  
 366, 396  
*Xin Yuan Shi*, 319–25, 327–29, 331, 349, 368, 370–73,  
 375, 385–86, 389, 393–95, 397–98, 404, 407,  
 410–14, 418, 420–23, 425–27, 429–45, 447–  
 48, 451, 453–54, 456, 458–62, 464–65, 469,  
 472–74, 480–81, 483–85, 487–93, 495–96,  
 498, 501–4, 507, 509, 511, 515–16, 521–22,  
 524–25, 564–67, 569, 572, 574–78, 582,  
 584–86, 589–95, 597–98, 600–603, 606, 608–  
 11, 613, 616–17, 619–27, 629, 631, 633–34,  
 636–39, 641–43, 645–48, 657–61, 663, 666,  
 669–75, 678–79, 681–85, 692  
 Xin-du, 671–74  
 Xin-zhou, 148, 303, 327, 413  
 Xinzhou, 167, 325, 330, 342, 358  
 Xin1zhou, 130, 647–48  
 Xin4zhou, 115–17, 191, 201–3, 207  
 Xin'an, 352–53, 472  
 Xin'an of Ba4zhou, 157  
 Xinbao'an-Huailai-Tumu-Langshan, 324, 327–28,  
 337, 412–13  
 Xincai, 610  
 Xincheng, 114, 196, 232, 342, 618–19  
 Xing De, Guo Yong'an and Wang Yishen, 561  
 Xing Deli and Zhang Zhi, 623  
 Xing Juzhan, 543  
*Xing-cheng Lu*, 309–10, 374, 378–80  
 Xing2zhou, 330, 349, 351, 511  
 Xing4zhou, 267, 269, 272, 535–36  
 Xinghua, 703, 715–16  
 Xingqing-fu city, 282, 406  
 Xingyang, 33–34, 37, 155  
 Xingyuan, 144, 158, 565–66, 568, 587, 589  
 Xingyuan-fu, 176, 179, 536, 564–66, 579–80  
 Xingzhang, 176  
 Xingzhong-fu, 330, 332, 339, 355, 417  
 Xingzhou, 125, 127, 144–45, 154, 181–82, 417, 424  
 Xing-zhou, 240, 349  
 Xingzhou prefecture, 350  
 Xining prefectures, 456  
 Xiningzhou, 245, 278  
 Xinquancheng, 285–86, 340, 356, 555  
 Xiongzhou, 169, 210, 329, 337–38  
 Xiping-wang, King, 166, 173, 236, 262–63, 265,  
 267–68  
 Xi-shan, 99, 103, 337, 358–59  
 Xishanzhai, 550–51  
 Xishui river, 568  
 Xi-xia, 226, 235–36, 258, 263–64, 364, 454–55  
*Xi-xia Shu Shi*4, 258, 261, 269, 277  
 Xi-yu, 345, 423, 427–28  
 Xizhou, 42, 47, 92, 98–101, 104, 109, 111  
 Xi-zhou, 98, 100, 264, 268, 275  
 Xu Bingzhe, 529  
 Xu Cong, 574  
 Xu Cun, 144, 178–79, 184  
 Xu Da, 252, 371, 697, 711, 717–8, 720–2  
 Xu Dachao, 228, 664  
 Xu Daguan, 381  
 Xu Daozong, 682  
 Xu Dexun, 184–5, 187  
 Xu Ding (Xu1-ding), 338, 341–3, 424  
 Xu Guifan, 201  
 Xu Guo, 354, 560  
 Xu Han, 249  
 Xu Heng, 511–12, 611–12, 662–63, 665–66, 693  
 Xu Hui, 559  
 Xu Jie, 191  
 Xu Jingye, 45  
 Xu Jingzong, 34, 46, 55  
 Xu Keqiong, 187  
 Xu Lin, 622  
 Xu Mengxin, 247, 304, 381  
 Xu Minzi, 514, 571–72, 604  
 Xu Qian and Xu Siheng, 166, 355  
 Xu Qindan, 72

- Xu Qing, 537  
 Xu Qingming, 93  
 Xu Qingsou, 591  
 Xu Qinji, 69  
 Xu Shanxin, 34  
 Xu Shiji, 32, 35, 37, 41, 43  
 Xu Shilong and Zhang Wenqian, 611, 662  
 Xu Shouhui, 703–4, 706, 708  
 Xu Shuji, 55–6  
 Xu Shuya, 45  
 Xu Wan, 196–97  
 Xu Wan and Xu Zaisi, 189  
 Xu Wei, 187  
 Xu Wen, 133, 135–36, 189–93, 198–99, 202  
 Xu Wen and Xu Zhixun, 133  
 Xu Wenzhen, 205–6  
 Xu Xi, 244, 276  
 Xu Xiji, 358, 560  
 Xu Xin, 599  
 Xu Xuan, 194–5, 230  
 Xu Yan, 359, 561  
 Xu Yanbo, 45–6  
 Xu Yanruo, 123, 128, 131, 134, 177–8, 208  
 Xu Yi, 549  
 Xu Yingniao, 634  
 Xu Yue, 196  
 Xu Yunlong, 711  
 Xu Yuan, 55, 622  
 Xu Yuanlang, 33–34, 37  
 Xu Yan, Pu Shengtao and Chen Shouyuan, 203  
 Xu Yanruo, 123, 128, 131, 208  
 Xu Yong, 331  
 Xu Yurong, 627–8  
 Xu Zaisi, 189, 196–97  
 Xu Zan, 674  
 Xu Zhigao, 188, 192–93, 203–4  
 Xu Zhongshu, 17, 67, 303, 367–68  
 Xu Ziming, 273  
 Xu-he River, 231  
 Xu-li-wu, 500  
 Xu-wu-shen, 397, 401  
*Xu Soong Zhongxing Biannian Zi-zhi Tong Jian*, 309, 378–79  
*Xu Zi-zhi Tong Jian*, 309–10, 318–19, 322, 469, 471, 596–601, 607  
 Xulyi2, 564  
 Xu3zhou, 53, 122, 126, 128–29  
 Xu3-zhou prefecture, 123, 126  
 Xu4zhou, 585–86, 593–95, 637, 678–79  
 Xuancheng satrap post, 189, 197  
 Xuande, 323, 327, 337, 411, 413  
 Xuandi, 23  
 Xuanhe Peace Accord, 249–50  
 Xuanhua, 132, 323–24, 327, 337, 681  
 Xuanping, 319, 321, 323–24, 410–11  
 Xuanpingbu, 319, 323, 410–11  
 Xuanwu-jun army, 132–3  
 Xuanzhou, 116–17, 126, 135–36, 189–90, 192  
 Xuanzong, 50, 53–54, 57, 62  
 Xue A'tan, 121, 127  
 Xue Chong, 112–3  
 Xue Chuyue, 73  
 Xue Guang, 532  
 Xue Hongzong, 101  
 Xue Jizhao, 232  
 Xue Ju, 29, 35  
 Xue Kan, 73  
 Xue Ne, 50, 70, 94  
 Xue Neng, 117, 175  
 Xue Qiong, 570  
 Xue Ren'gao, 35  
 Xue Ren'gui, 91  
 Xue Sheng, 610  
 Xue Shixiong, 33  
 Xue Sixing, 47  
 Xue Tai, 72  
 Xue Tieshan, 113  
 Xue Wanjun brothers, 37, 41  
 Xue Wen, 199  
 Xue Wenjie, 203  
 Xue Wenyu, 159  
 Xue Xian, Fu Youde, Cao Liangchen and Gu Shi, 720  
 Xue Xiang and Zhang Shangying, 243  
 Xue Yuanshang, 62  
 Xue Zhiqin, 123, 129  
 Xue Zhongyi, 53  
 Xueche-bieji's Jurkins, 386  
 Xue-du, 415, 418  
 Xueyantuo, 28, 41–44, 68, 106–7  
     combination of Xue and Yantuo clans, 68  
 Xun-si-gan-cheng city (Samarkand), 434  
 Xunzhou, 576, 645  
 Xuyi-jun, 345, 545, 557  
 Xuzhou, 62, 110–12, 164–65, 167, 471–74, 610–11  
 Xuzhou and Su4zhou, 473  
 Xuzhou campaign, 611

## Y

- Yaishan, 218–19, 641, 644, 646–47, 649  
 Yalawachi, 477–78  
 Yalong-jiang River, 515  
 Yalu-jiang River, 31, 44, 348, 422, 669–70, 723

Yan Bao and Wang Yanzhang, 144  
 Yan Bolu, 643  
 Yan Chao, 99  
 Yan Chong, 541  
 Yan Fu, 359  
 Yan Gaoqing, 52  
 Yan Gaoqing and Yan Zhenqing, 52  
 Yan Keqiu, 191-2  
 Yan Liben, 40  
 Yan Lu, 471  
 Yan Ning, 351-2  
 Yan Ningyue, 181  
 Yan Qingfu, 117  
 Yan Rou (Yan2 Rou), 10-12, 296  
 Yan Shaoqing, 628  
 Yan Shi, 347-353, 358-9, 421, 424  
 Yan Shigu, 41, 45  
 Yan Shun and Li Jin, 629  
 Yan Sixiao, Yan Fengxian and Li Jingchang, 721  
 Yan Wang, 607  
 Yan Wen'gu, 92  
 Yan Wenyong, 239  
 Yan Wu, 99  
 Yan Youxi, 243  
 Yan Yuan, 243  
 Yan Yun, 534  
 Yan Zhenghui, 98  
 Yan Zhenqing, 52, 54-55  
 Yan Zhitui, 21  
 Yan Zhong  
 Yan Zhongfan, 610, 620, 626, 631, 635-6  
 Yan Zhongji, 661  
 Yan Zhongsi, 610-1  
 Yan Zhuang, 55  
 Yan-tiemu'er, 658, 696-97  
 Yan-Yun prefectures, 152, 159, 168, 247, 256,  
 304, 532  
 Yan2zhou, 168, 287, 455, 590-91  
 Yan3-he River in Wenxian, 127  
 Yan3zhou, 123-24, 130-31, 133, 135, 151, 167  
 Yan'an, 280, 284, 286, 353, 358, 530, 533  
 Yan-bing troops, 165  
 Yancheng, 541-42  
 Yang An'er, 335, 338, 354, 559  
 Yang Bian, 170, 110  
 Yang Bin, Guo Wei, Shi Hongzhao and Wang  
 Zhang, 165  
 Yang Cheng, 176-77  
 Yang Cheng and Li Maozhen, 177  
 Yang Chenghe, 60  
 Yang Congyi, 538, 540  
 Yang Cunzhong, 536, 538, 542-43, 546, 549  
 Yang Daquan, 581, 585  
 Yang Daquan and Feng Dayong, 581  
 Yang Dasheng, 591  
 Yang Dayuan, 599-600, 614  
 Yang Deguang, 350, 557  
 Yang Ding, 85  
 Yang Dongqian, 209  
 Yang Duan, 63, 580, 596  
 Yang Dui, 585  
 Yang Fugong, 130-31  
 Yang Fuguang, 113, 116, 118, 121-2, 128  
 Yang Fuxing, 584  
 Yang Gongyi, 665-66  
 Yang Guang, 15, 24, 30  
 Yang Guangyuan, 159-61, 163  
 Yang-gui-fei, 50, 52-3  
 Yang Guozhong, 50, 53, 74, 111  
 Yang Hao, 29, 34  
 Yang-He River, 319, 321, 410  
 Yang Huan, 478  
 Yang Huilin, 60  
 Yang Ji, 239, 268  
 Yang Jian, 15, 21, 23-24  
 Yang Jie, 579-80  
 Yang Jie's Yang Family Army, 580  
 Yang Jin, 531  
 Yang Jiong, 29, 33-5  
 Yang Jishan, 31  
 Yang Ju, 93  
 Yang Kejia, 554  
 Yang Kezhong, 706  
 Yang Kui, 189  
 Yang Li, 597, 616, 637-38  
 Yang Li3, 597  
 Yang Li4, 597  
 Yang Liang, 24, 30  
 Yang Liangjie, 634, 642  
 Yang Lin, 599  
 Yang Longyan, 133, 185, 188, 191-92, 199  
 Yang Longyan's King Wu-wang state, 188  
 Yang Meng, 193  
 Yang Miaozen, 472-73, 562-64  
 Yang Pu, 192-93, 301  
 Yang Puxiong, 704  
 Yang Qi, 566  
 Yang Qian, 179  
 Yang Qianwan, 85  
 Yang Qing, 33  
 Yang Qiuqing, 117  
 Yang Quan and Cao Zheng, 568  
 Yang Quanmei, 125  
 Yang Quanzhang, 148



- Yang Renfeng, 456  
 Yang Renhou, 176  
 Yang Ren'quan, 204–5  
 Yang Renzheng, 154  
 Yang Riyou, 59, 100  
 Yang Rui, 566  
 Yang Sanjing, 37  
 Yang Shen, 85  
 Yang Shi, 248  
 Yang Shifan, 188  
 Yang Shihou, 135, 143, 146–47, 176–77, 185  
 Yang Shili, 177  
 Yang Shilin, 34  
 Yang Shouhou, 177–78  
 Yang Shouliang, 64, 131, 176–77  
 Yang Shouzhong and Yang Shizhen, 177  
 Yang Sigong, 206  
 Yang Su, 23–4, 28, 30–31, 42  
 Yang Taishi and Wang Xiaolian, 153  
 Yang Tan, 156  
 Yang Teng, 85  
 Yang Tingbi, 685  
 Yang Tingjin, 99  
 Yang Tingyi, 209  
 Yang Tingzhang, 223  
 Yang Tongguan (Yang-wanzhe), 705  
 Yang Weizhong, 326, 360, 506, 511–12  
 Yang Weizhong and Zhao Bi, 512, 609  
 Yang Wen, 587–88, 590–91, 595  
 Yang Wen'an, 616, 620, 636, 638  
 Yang Wen'gan, 38  
 Yang Wen'guang, 238, 241  
 Yang Wo, 136–138, 141, 185, 188, 190–191  
 Yang Wolie, 285  
 Yang Woyan, 320, 340, 459, 462–64, 554–55  
 Yang Xigu, 59, 100  
 Yang Xin, 229  
 Yang Xingmi, 126–27, 133, 135–38, 179, 184–85, 187–93, 191, 196–97  
 Yang Xingqian, 119  
 Yang Xiong, 294, 551  
 Yang Xiuming, 99  
 Yang Xuan, 85  
 Yang Xuan'gan, 31–32  
 Yang Xuanji, 70  
 Yang Yan, 58  
     Two-taxes Reform, 58  
 Yang Yancheng, 326, 506  
 Yang Yanwen, 158  
 Yang Yao and Huang Cheng, 537  
 Yang Yong, 27  
 Yang You, Liu Quan and Li Quan, Shi Gui, Ge Ping and Yang Deguang, 350  
 Yang You, 350, 554, 557  
 Yang You[4], 29, 36  
 Yang Yuansi, 71  
 Yang Yanzhao, 241  
 Yang Ye, 225, 229, 232, 238, 241  
 Yang Yi, 230, 240, 571–72  
 Yang Yichen, 32  
 Yang Yichen, 31  
 Yang Yingkui, 634  
 Yang Yizhong, 249, 536, 538, 542–43, 546, 549  
 Yang Yuanyan, 47  
 Yang Yun and Cao Youwen, 582  
 Yang Zaisi, 707  
 Yang Zaixing, 284, 536, 541  
 Yang Zhen, 280  
 Yang Zheng, 24, 536–37, 540, 543  
 Yang Zhengheng, 705, 707  
 Yang Zhilie, 97, 99, 109  
 Yang Ziyang, 177  
 Yang Zhong, 21  
 Yang Zongmin, 249  
*Yang Family's Female Generals*, 229, 242  
 Yang-taihou, 239  
 Yang-wanzhe, 706–7  
 Yang-Bi-jiang River, 71, 93, 98  
 Yang-lian-zhen-jia, 634  
 Yang2zhou, 584  
 Yangcheng, 163–64, 231  
 Yangcheng siege battle feats, 163  
 Yangdi, 28, 30, 113, 115  
 Yangliu, 150–51  
 Yangping-guan, 578–82  
 Yangluobu, 604, 624  
 Yangtong, 80, 89–90  
 Yangtze, 115–18, 185, 194–96, 223, 533–35, 537, 544–48, 600–604, 610, 619, 623–26, 668  
 Yangtze and Han-shui rivers, 623  
 Yangtze and Huai-shui River, 92, 195, 539  
 Yangtze origin, 88  
 Yangtze River, 30, 88, 111, 113, 194, 294, 574–5, 584, 586–87, 594, 603, 606–7, 623–24, 640, 703–4  
 Yang-Wu and Southern Tang, 175  
 Yang-Wu, 192, 198–9, 202–4  
 Yang-Wu regime, 138, 141, 156, 188, 191–92, 198, 201–3  
 Yangzhou, 117, 126, 221–23, 545–46, 561, 597–98, 627–28, 640–41, 668  
 Yang-zhou, 181, 556, 558, 565  
 Yang-zhou Prefecture, 461, 479, 565  
 Yangziqiao, 627

- Yan-jing, 246–47, 256, 303–4, 326, 478, 572–73,  
 606–7, 657, 659–61  
 Yanmen, 6, 10, 12, 119–20, 231–32  
 Yanmen-city, 29  
 Yanzhi-buhua, 715–16  
 Yanzhou, 99, 109–10, 237, 260–62, 271–73, 276–  
 77, 550  
 Yanzhou Prefecture, 18, 101, 109, 174  
 Yanzhou relief army, 143, 261  
 Yao Chong, 50, 72  
 Yao Chou, 69  
 Yao Desui, 598  
 Yao Feng, 168, 206, 221  
 Yao Gu, 250  
 Yao Jianzhi, 235  
 Yao Kun, 153  
 Yao Neibing, 169, 222  
 Yao Pingzhong, 249, 529  
 Yao Shi'an, 591  
 Yao Shu, 511–12, 515–16, 572–73, 608–10, 657–58,  
 660–62  
 Yao Wenlong, 604  
 Yao Xiong, 277, 279  
 Yao Xiong and Miao Lü, 279  
 Yao Yin2, 629, 632  
 Yao Zheng, 541–42  
 Yaomuhu'er, 689  
 Yaonian-shi Khitans, 309, 311, 380  
 Yaoshui, 358, 560  
 Yaozhou, 74, 93, 98, 104, 111, 516  
     joint Nanzhao-Tibetan army retook, 98  
 Yaozhou barbarians, 93  
 Yaozhou city, reconstructed, 111  
 Yao-zhu, 706  
 Yarlung Valley, 80  
 Yaroslav, 369, 485–86  
 Yaroslav Vsevolodovich, 490  
 Yashan, 641, 644, 646–47, 649, 652  
 Yashan battle, 647  
 Yazhou, 591, 593, 595, 597  
 Yecheng, 23, 55–56, 211, 220  
 Ye-cheng city, 23  
 Ye-da, 25–26  
 Yedu, 154–55, 161, 165–66, 173  
 Yedu mutineers, 155  
 Ye'erdishi-he, 394, 398, 403, 420  
 Ye'gu, King, 671  
 Yehuling, 283, 318–23, 337, 409–11  
 Yehuling and Huihechuan battles, 323  
 Yehuling campaign, 319–20, 322, 410–11  
 Yeke-Mongghol, 313, 394, 662  
 Yeku's Mongols, 671  
 Yelan Khan, 76–77  
 Yelatuluxiong's attack of Pingliangshan, 600  
 Ye-li Yu-qi, 241, 272  
 Yelizhijidai, 440, 509–10  
 Yellow River, 1, 36, 247–51, 258–63, 278–84, 302,  
 332, 341, 455–57, 459–63, 465–74, 542  
 Yellow River Bend, 4, 59, 89, 91, 99, 235  
 Yellow River's Western Bend, 455  
 Yellow River Winding, 106, 285–86, 355, 455,  
 474, 555  
 Yellow Turbans, 701  
 Yellow Uygurs, 404, 456  
 Yelü  
     exiled senior Khitan prince, 164  
     exile senior Khitan prince, 173  
 Yelü Abaoji, 73–74, 77–79, 148–49, 152–53, 170–71  
 Yelü Ahai, 317, 319, 408, 430  
 Yelü A'mei, 412  
 Yelü Bei, 164, 173, 226, 253, 374, 666  
 Yelü Chongyuan, 237  
 Yelü Chucai, 335, 470, 477–78, 481, 503, 506  
 Yelü Chun, 246–7, 256, 280, 303  
 Yelü Dabu'er, 399  
 Yelü Dashi (Prester John), 246–47, 256–57, 280, 303,  
 305–8, 425  
 Yelü Dashi and Khitan Empress Xiao-fei, 246–47,  
 256, 303  
 Yelü Dashi's Kara-Khitay, 305, 316  
 Yelü Dashi's Khatun city, 306  
 Yelü Deguang, 156, 159–61, 163–64, 170, 172–73  
 Yelü Deguang and Shi Jingtang, 160  
 Yelü Dilie, 213  
 Yelü Dilu (Yang Gun), 167  
 Yelü Eliduo, 301  
 Yelü Fuding, 302  
 Yelü Gu-nai, 418  
 Yelü Hanli, 302  
 Yelü Han-she, 348, 418  
 Yelü Helusaogu, 399  
 Yelü Hongji, 254  
 Yelü Huaiyi, 309  
 Yelü Huaiyi and Yila Wen, 307  
 Yelü Jing, 165–66, 173, 211–12, 225–26, 253  
 Yelü Liuge, 326–27, 333, 339, 348, 412, 417–18, 422,  
 477–78  
 Yelü Longxu, 231–2, 234, 237, 312  
 Yelü Lü, 335  
 Yelü Lubugu, 159  
 Yelü Manggudai, 677–79, 682  
 Yelü Mawu, 533  
 Yelü Nielugu and Lu Wenjin, 149  
 Yelü Nou-li-si, 74

- Yelü Nugu, 234  
 Yelü Ousuwan, 307, 398  
 Yelü Pode, 159  
 Yelü Ronglu, 226–27, 253–54, 257  
 Yelü Rongyun (Haan Derang), 231, 253  
 Yelü Ruan, 164–65, 173, 257  
 Yelü Sha, 230-1  
 Yelü Shancai and Yelü Biancai, 470  
 Yelü Shan'ge, 574  
 Yelü Shou-gu-nu, 418  
 Yelü Sibü, 417–18  
 Yelü Talie, 225  
 Yelü Tan, 302  
 Yelü Tao, 371, 660  
 Yelü Temo, 359  
 Yelü Temoyan, 255, 301  
 Yelü Tianyou, 359  
 Yelü Tuhua, 342, 419  
 Yelü Tuhuai, 320  
 Yelü Tumandaer, 637–39  
 Yelü Wotela, 399  
 Yelü Xian, 173, 226, 231, 253, 257  
 Yelü Xida, 230  
 Yelü Xiezhen, 230–32  
 Yelü Xiuge, 227, 231–32, 253  
 Yelü Xiuge and Haan Derang, 232  
 Yelü Xue-du, 415  
 Yelü Xuegu, south capital cavalry-field army director, 231  
 Yelü Yali, 73  
 Yelü Yanxi, 246–47, 254, 256–57, 279–80, 305  
 Yelü Yilie, 398  
 Yelü Yixin, 254  
 Yelü Youshang, 666  
 Yelü Yudu, 250, 255, 302–3, 306, 308  
 Yelü Zhangnu, 255, 301  
 Yelü Zhilugu, 307, 398  
 Yelü Zhu, 255, 301  
 Yelü Zhuge, 614  
 Yelü Zongzhen, 227, 237, 254, 257  
 Yenan, 4, 6, 272–73, 286, 353  
 Yeniseian and Sino-Tibetan languages, 1  
 Yenisei Minor River area, 689  
 Yenisei, 369  
 Ye-si-bu, 414, 417  
 Ye-su, 506, 510, 718, 720–21  
 Yesu-da'er, 636–37, 639  
 Yesudai'er, King, 637, 678  
 Ye-su-die-er, 343, 687, 724  
 Yesugei, 374–75, 377, 384–85, 387, 395  
 Yesugei's brothers, 375, 384  
 Yesugei's death, 375, 377  
 Ye-tai, 25–26  
 Ye Chang, 625  
 Ye Longli, 321  
 Ye Qiao, 204  
 Ye Sheng, 705, 712  
 Ye Shi, 549  
 Ye Wang, 723  
 Ye Xiurong, 647  
 Ye Yiwen, 546  
 Ye Zhicai, 589  
 Yexian'ge, 608  
 Yexian-buhua, 723  
 Yexian-temur, 703  
 Yeyan, 87  
 Yezhilie, 512, 515  
 Yi2zhou, 100, 107–9  
 Yi4du, 343, 347–48, 351–52, 361, 421, 455, 555, 561, 610–12  
 Yi4zhou, 124, 222–23, 232, 246–48, 256, 303, 314, 328–29  
 Yi4-zhou, 23–24  
 Yichang, 133, 141, 585, 592  
 Yide, 323, 411  
 Yiding-jun garrison army, 110  
 Yih2zhou, 329, 337–38, 343, 543–44  
 Yih2zhou rebels, 351  
 Yihzhou, 475, 611, 718  
 Yijin-guan Pass, 169, 174, 221–22, 232  
 Yijin-jun battles, 136, 191, 198  
 Yijin-jun garrison army, 198  
 Yila, 77, 311, 313–14, 417  
 Yila Changshou, 472  
 Yila Du, 417  
 Yila Ge, 463  
 Yila Mainu, 458, 669, 670  
 Yila Min, 313  
 Yila Nie'er, 332, 351, 358  
 Yila Pu'a (Yila Pu'an, Pu'e, Puwa), 360, 362, 461–62, 464, 563–64  
 Yila Wen, 307, 380  
 Yila Yuan, 471–73, 568  
 Yila Zhan'gu, 471–73  
 Yila-zhongjianu, 352, 424  
 Yilahe-sangkun, 395–96  
 Yilan, 251, 344  
 yi-li-jin, 77, 376  
 Yilou, 18, 292, 294, 296  
 Yilou and Jurchen barbarians of Manchuria, 17, 367  
 Yilou people, 296  
 Yi-mi, 315  
 Yimin, 315  
 Yi-mou-xun, 103–4

Yin Bangbao, 671  
 Yin Chongke, 210  
 Yin Chubin, 133  
 Yin Gu, 629  
 Yin Hao, 147  
 Yin Hong, 672  
 Yin Kaishan, 35, 40  
 Yin Shiyong and Gao Tianyou, 472  
 Yin Shou, 27  
 Yin Wen'gui, 189  
 Yin Yinglei, 620  
 Yin Yu, 632  
 Yin Zhen, 566  
 Yin Zhu, 237, 272  
 Yin Ziqi, 55  
 Yin1-shui River, 117, 122  
 Yindao (silver blade) army, 62–63  
 Ying1zhou, 210, 346  
 Ying2zhou, 68–70, 72, 132, 161  
 Ying2-zhou, 70, 169, 222–23, 227, 232–34  
 Ying2zhou Prefecture, 8, 16, 67, 298, 367  
 Ying3zhou, 536–37, 573, 576, 621–25, 702–3  
 Ying3-zhou, 607, 661  
 Ying3zhou, 572  
 Ying4zhou, 232, 279, 305  
 Yingchang-fu, 536, 541–42  
 Ying Bida, 704  
 Ying Chunzhi, 350, 557  
 Ying Qianzhi, 556  
 Yingli County, 455, 562  
 Yingzhou, 70, 172, 247, 254, 256  
 Yingzong, 695–96  
 Yinshan Mountains, 4, 7, 312, 317  
*yin-yang*, 613, 649, 664  
 Yinzhou, 96, 99, 260–61, 263, 276  
 Yinzhou and Yanzhou, 263  
 Yiping, 323, 411  
 Yiqu, 4–5, 86  
 Yiqu-rong barbarians, 5-6, 258  
 Yiqu surname, 5  
 Yi Seong-gye, 709, 723  
 Yi-shan-yi-ning (monk), 675  
 Yi-shui River, 279, 573  
 Yisi-basi, 715  
 Yissaur, 452  
 Yisudar, 687, 698, 724  
 Yisun-temur, 696  
 Yiwu, 100, 107, 119, 124  
 Yiwu-jun army, 145  
 Yixian, 227, 232, 234, 332–33  
 Yixiji Khan, 25  
 Yizheng, 545, 551, 574, 586  
 Yizhi-wende (Eulji Mundeok), 31  
 Yizhou, 42, 607  
 Yong1zhou, 113, 116, 514, 516, 605  
 Yong3zhou, 550, 645  
 Yongchang rebelling, 302  
 Yongle, 244, 276, 373, 710  
 Yongle fort, 276  
 Yongle siege battle, 276  
 Yongqiu, 53, 55  
 Yongshou, 99  
 Yong-xi, 334, 341  
 Yongxing-jun military garrison district army, 264  
 Yongxi Northern Campaign, 227, 231, 253  
 Yongzhou, 23, 37, 78, 360  
 Yong-zhou, 238  
 You4zhou, 272, 276–77, 285–86, 340, 555  
 You-beiping, 6, 10-13, 296  
 You-hala-badu, 359  
 You-yi-shi land, 295  
 Youzhou, 11–13, 50, 58, 67, 71–75, 77-8, 113-14, 138, 141, 148–49, 152, 155–57, 170, 217, 227, 230–32, 256  
 Youzhou and Lulong, 58, 75, 149  
 Youzhou and Yingzhou prefectures, 70  
 You-zhou prefecture, 261  
*Yu Gong*, 81, 83, 88, 259, 294  
 Yu An, 207  
 Yu Chang, 675  
 Yu Changshi, 324  
 Yu Chao'en, 55-7, 97  
 Yu Cong, 118  
 Yu Dajun, 373, 398  
 Yu Guang, 708  
 Yu Hongzhi, 61  
 Yu Hui, 591-2, 594  
 Yu Jie, 515, 574, 576–77, 586–91  
 Yu Jing, 238-9  
 Yu Mao, 704  
 Yu Qingze, 27  
 Yu Que, 705, 708  
 Yu Rong, 324, 558  
 Yu Shinan, 40  
 Yu Tingyu, 705, 712  
 Yu Tonghai, 712, 717  
 Yu Xian, 354  
 Yu Xing, 587, 590, 595, 613–14  
 Yu Xiulie, 90  
 Yu Yanyu, 566  
 Yu Yinglong, 666  
 Yu Yunwen, 546  
 Yu Zhining, 46  
 Yu Zhongde, 31

Yu Zhongwen, 31  
 Yu-guan, 152, 565–66, 592–93, 598  
 Yu-shui River, 148, 171  
 Yu-shan, 462  
 Yu-zhong land, 6  
 Yu2-guan, 72–73, 148, 170–71  
 Yu2zhou, 167, 178, 184  
 Yu4xian, 109–10, 114, 119, 247  
 Yu4yu, 72  
 Yu4zhou, 109–10, 114, 119, 321, 467  
 Yuan Cong, Wang Yanwei and Wang Fan, 192  
 Yuan Fengtao, 127  
 Yuan Gongchen, 583  
 Yuan Gongyu, 46  
 Yuan Guangting, 100  
 Yuan Haowen, 336, 359, 466, 470, 473, 511  
 Yuan Hongsi, 30  
 Yuan Jie, 603  
 Yuan Mei, 191  
 Yuan Qi, 545  
 Yuan Shang, 11, 66, 365  
 Yuan Shao, 10–11, 16, 66, 365  
 Yuan Tan and Yuan Shang, 11  
 Yuan Tian'gang and Li Chunfeng, 648  
 Yuan Wendu, 34  
 Yuan Xiangxian, 147  
 Yuan Xiangxian, 147  
 Yuan Xingqin, 154–55  
 Yuan Yanchao, 157  
 Yuan Yong, 590  
 Yuan Zhen, Bai Juyi, Yuan Shen, Li Heh,  
     Wei Yingwu, Liu Yuxi, Haan Yu, Liu  
     Zongyuan, 179  
 Yuan Zhi, 474-5  
*Yuan Shi*, 317–24, 326–31, 372–73, 408–14, 420–23,  
     430–39  
*Yuan Tong Zhi*, 695–96, 700  
*yuan-bao* [most treasured] *jiao-chao* [exchange  
     notes]' paper currency, 660–61  
*Yuan-chao Mi Shi*, 371–73  
 Yuan2zhou, 137, 191, 198, 201–2  
 Yuan2-zhou, 223, 240, 530  
 Yuan court, 665, 686, 690, 693, 715  
 Yuan dynasty, 370–73, 375–77, 393–95, 410–12, 621,  
     690, 695–96, 700, 701–4  
 Yuan emperors, 685, 708, 718, 721  
 Yuan Emperor Chengzong, 666, 688, 690, 692–93  
 Yuan Emperor Huizong, 666, 694  
 Yuan Emperor Renzong, 666, 693, 696  
 Yuan Emperor Shizu, 702  
 Yuan Emperor Shundi, 701–2, 704, 706, 720–21, 724  
 Yuan Emperor Taizong, 459, 478, 563, 696  
 Yuan Emperor Wuzong, 690, 693  
 Yuan Emperor Xianzong, 446, 590  
 Yuan Emperor Zhaozong, 721  
 Yuan history annals, 666  
 Yuan-jiang River, 185, 243  
 Yuancheng, 149  
 Yuanxi garrisons, 595  
 Yuan-zhi-gan, 156  
 Yuanzhou, 243, 272, 274, 625–26, 628  
 Yuan-zhou, 260, 708  
 Yuanzhou, attacked, 57, 99  
 Yuchi Dun, 23  
 Yuchi Jingde, 37–40  
 Yuchi Jiong, 23–24  
 Yuchi Sheng, 99  
 Yuci, 36, 127, 188, 249–50  
 Yudu, 202, 645  
 Yue Fei, 531, 533–39, 541–43, 550  
 Yue Fei's Northern Campaigns, 537  
 Yue Ke, 542, 648-9  
 Yue Yun, 537, 541–43  
 Yue4 Congxun (son of Yue Yanzhen), 128  
 Yue4 Congxun, 125, 128  
 Yue4 Xingda (Le Hangda), 120, 124–25  
 Yue4 Yanzhen (Yue Xingda), 124–25, 128  
 Yue-jia-jun army, 538  
 Yue4zhou, 534, 723  
 Yuezhi, 26, 77, 84, 365  
 Yuezhou, 185, 187–88, 197, 606, 625  
 Yuri II, 485–86  
 Yuri II Vsevolodovich, 485–86  
 Yuling-guan pass, 704  
 Yu-long-jie-chi (Urgenchi), 345  
 Yun4zhou, 101, 113, 119–20, 131, 133, 150–51,  
     162, 265  
 Yun4-zhou, 126, 130  
 Yun4zhou siege, 151  
 Yunding-cheng, 584, 587, 589, 592, 600  
 Yung-Lo Emperor, 710  
 Yunnan, 98, 513–17, 678–79, 683–84, 695, 722  
 Yunnan-Sichuan border area, 645  
 Yunnan-wang, King, 98, 678  
 Yunnan-wang king title, 679  
 Yunnei-zhou, 279–80  
 Yun-surnamed Xianyun people, 86  
 Yunzhou, 110, 113-4, 230, 232, 234  
 Yushi-men city gate, 123  
 Yuwen, 8, 13–14, 23, 297, 366  
 Yuwen clans, 8, 16, 21  
 Yuwen Huaji, 32, 34  
 Yuwen Maozhao, 331, 334, 342, 347, 555–56  
 Yuwen Shu, 31

Yuwen Xianbei, 8, 16, 34, 67  
Yuwen Zhao, 23  
Yuwen-surnamed kings of Northern Zhou, 23  
Yuyang, 6, 10–11, 13, 295–96, 329–30  
Yuzhong of Gansu, 275, 286, 340, 346  
Yuzhou, 42, 247, 256, 463–64  
Yuzhou/Yuxian, 479

## Z

Zagros Mountains, 432, 441, 447  
Zaining-jiang River of Korea, 295  
Zalton, 218, 643, 692, 699, 714–17  
Zanhuang, 144, 359, 561  
*zanpu*, 90, 96, 98, 267  
Zan Wanshou, 614, 616, 635–37  
Zaojiaobu, 345–46, 554, 564  
Zaoyang, 345–46, 556, 562, 573, 575  
Zaoyang Battle, 556  
Zaoyang-jun, 346, 556, 573  
*zen*, 335, 664, 674  
Zeng Bu, 244  
Zeng Faxing, 704  
Zeng Yan, 208  
Zeng Yuanyu, 112-3  
Zeng Yuanzi, 628, 677  
Zeng Ze, 532  
Zeravshan River, 429  
Zezhou, 78, 121–22, 127, 141, 167, 150, 223, 249–50, 354  
Zhaba'er-huozhe, 328, 396  
Zhai Gui (Di Gui), 624  
Zhai Wenbin (Di Wenbin), 623  
Zhai Rang, 32, 34  
Zhan-di (Jend), 428, 435  
Zhan'ge Hanu, 307  
Zhan'ge Wanzan, 357, 474  
Zhan'ge Wanzhan, 568  
Zhanhan (Wanyan Zonghan/Wanyan Zhanhan), 255, 300, 305  
*Zhan-jun*, 328, 333, 329  
Zhanhe Chongshan, 477  
Zhanhe Heda, 409  
Zhanhe-nanhe, 608, 657  
Zhang An'guo, 547  
Zhang Ao, 191  
Zhang Ba, 648  
Zhang Badu, 429  
Zhang Balang, 120  
Zhang Bangchang, 250, 529, 532, 534  
Zhang Batu (Zhang Rou), 603  
Zhang Bi, 659

Zhang Bin, 556  
Zhang Bixian, 708  
Zhang Bofen and Zhang Zhongxiong, 250  
Zhang Bozhi, 568  
Zhang Chan, 120  
Zhang Chao, 545  
Zhang Chaoyi, 240, 101  
Zhang Chaozong, 55  
Zhang Cheng, 245, 278  
Zhang Chengfan, 117  
Zhang Chengye, 142, 146, 179  
Zhang Chengye and Li Cunzhang, 142  
Zhang Chong, 302  
Zhang Chujin, 149-50  
Zhang Chuqiu, 150,  
Zhang Cunjing, 131  
Zhang Chun, 11, 703  
Zhang Chuqiu, 149–50  
Zhang Congbin, 161  
Zhang Cong'en, 162  
Zhang Congfu, 188  
Zhang Congshi, 198  
Zhang Congxun, 143, 161, 261  
Zhang Da, 36, 647  
Zhang Da'an, 45  
Zhang Dadao (Zhang Linn), 351  
Zhang Dayue, 599  
Zhang De, 169, 174, 222, 577  
Zhang Degang (Zhang Rou), 338  
Zhang Dehui, 658, 688  
Zhang Delun, 636, 638  
Zhang Desheng, 705, 712  
Zhang Dewei, 357  
Zhang Dexing, 645  
Zhang Di, 571-2  
Zhang Dian, 632  
Zhang Ding, 572, 625  
Zhang Dingbian, 714  
Zhang Dingxin, 625  
Zhang Du, 565  
Zhang Dun, 243–45, 276–79, 553  
Zhang Fang, 556, 658  
Zhang Feng  
Zhang Fu, 338, 352, 424  
Zhang Gao, 55  
Zhang Gong (Zhang Jue2), 247, 256, 304  
Zhang Gongduo and Zhao Tingyin, 158  
Zhang Gongjin, 40  
Zhang Gongsu, 113  
Zhang Gongyu, 534  
Zhang Gui, 128, 183, 613–14, 620–22, 667  
Zhang Gui4

Zhang Guiba and Li Dang, 129  
 Zhang Guihou, Zhu Youqian, 143  
 Zhang Han (Zhang Han2), 95  
 Zhang Handing, 150-1  
 Zhang Hanjie, 149-51  
 Zhang Hanmei, 143, 261, 307  
 Zhang Hanqing, 206  
 Zhang Hansi, 207  
 Zhang Hanying, 307, 626  
 Zhang Hanyun, 131  
 Zhang Hao, 190-91  
 Zhang He, 711  
 Zhang He2, 639  
 Zhang Haogu, 610  
 Zhang Hong, 610, 623  
 Zhang Hongdao (Zhang Yifu), 648  
 Zhang Hongfan, 344, 421, 619, 646-47  
 Zhang Honggang, 606  
 Zhang Honglüe, 611  
 Zhang Hongqi, 659  
 Zhang Hongyan, 603  
 Zhang Hu and Zhong Long, 645  
 Zhang Hui, 340, 356, 459, 462-64, 554, 559, 561  
 Zhang Hui4, 198  
 Zhang Ji, 194, 369  
 Zhang Jiao, 701  
 Zhang Jie, 243, 245, 258, 271, 276-78, 607  
 Zhang Jieran, 51  
 Zhang Jian of the Five Dynasties, 155, 184  
 Zhang Jian of the Soong dynasty, 626, 628  
 Zhang Jianzhi, 46-7  
 Zhang Jin, 352-53, 472-73  
 Zhang Jinn, 275  
 Zhang Jincheng, 32  
 Zhang Jing, 330, 332, 339, 415-16  
 Zhang Jingda, 159-60  
 Zhang Jingshun, 94  
 Zhang Jiujie, 69-70  
 Zhang Jiushi (Zhang Shicheng), 703  
 Zhang Jiyong, 101  
 Zhang Ju, 347, 421, 555  
 Zhang Jue, 602, 614, 616, 636-39  
 Zhang Jue2, 247-48, 256, 304, 529  
 Zhang Jun, 249, 532-36, 538, 540, 542-43, 547-49  
 Zhang Kai, 352, 354-55, 424  
 Zhang Kai3, 473  
 Zhang Kui, 533  
 Zhang Lang, 150  
 Zhang Lejinqiu, 98  
 Zhang Lian, 165  
 Zhang Liang, Hou Junji, Zhang Gongjin, Cheng Zhijie, Yu Shinan, 40  
 Zhang Liangbi, 709, 718, 720, 721  
 Zhang Liangdi, 54  
 Zhang Liangzuo, 723  
 Zhang Liao, 11  
 Zhang Lidao, 677, 679  
 Zhang Lieliang, 629  
 Zhang Lin, 347-48, 351-52, 354, 555, 558-59, 627  
 Zhang Linn, 351  
 Zhang Lin of Yi4du, 347-48, 351, 421, 555  
 Zhang Lingduo and Luo Yan'gui, 223  
 Zhang Long, 711  
 Zhang Meng, 180  
 Zhang Minxiu, 471  
 Zhang Pobai, 155  
 Zhang Pu, 235, 263-64, 266  
 Zhang Qian, 15  
 Zhang Qiantuo, 74, 104, 111  
 Zhang Qixian, 235-36, 264  
 Zhang Qiyan, 639, 694  
 Zhang Qiyuan, 608, 657, 659  
 Zhang Quyi and Lü Xianglai, 51  
 Zhang Quan, 632  
 Zhang Quanyi, 127, 141  
 Zhang Rong, 361, 434, 455, 472-3, 561  
 Zhang Rongshi, 604, 610, 625, 629, 659  
 Zhang Rongshi, Wang Wen'gan, Yan Zhongfan, 610  
 Zhang Rongzu, 360  
 Zhang Rou, 337-38, 348-49, 352, 469-70, 507, 575-77, 606  
 Zhang Ru, 632  
 Zhang Rui and Kong Wei, 128  
 Zhang Shan, 357  
 Zhang Shanxiang, 35  
 Zhang Shangying, 243  
 Zhang Sheng, 604  
 Zhang Shi, 594, 596, 599  
 Zhang Shicheng, 699, 703, 706-7, 710, 712-13, 717  
 Zhang Shide, 717  
 Zhang Shijie, 618, 624-5, 627-34, 640-48, 667-8  
 Zhang Shiyan, 321  
 Zhang Shougui, 73, 94  
 Zhang Shoujin, 158  
 Zhang Shu, 270  
 Zhang-shui River, 125, 624  
 Zhang Shun, 621-22, 667  
 Zhang Shun and Zhang Gui, 621, 667  
 Zhang Shuo (Zhang Sui), 94  
 Zhang Shuye, 250  
 Zhang Shuyin, 565  
 Zhang Suo, 531  
 Zhang Taiyan (Zhang Binglin), 664  
 Zhang Tianci, 474

Zhang Tian'gang, 357, 475, 560, 570  
 Zhang Tianhe, 324  
 Zhang Tianyi, 421  
 Zhang Tianyou, 707, 712  
 Zhang Ting'e, 147  
 Zhang Tingfan, 134, 137  
 Zhang Tongru, 56-7  
 Zhang Tingrui, 614-15  
 Zhang Tingshang, 103  
 Zhang Tonggu, Xiao Zhe and Fan Tong, 539  
 Zhang Tongwu, 52  
 Zhang Wei, 346, 556, 564  
 Zhang Wenbiao, 188, 224  
 Zhang Wenhui, 683-84  
 Zhang Wenli, 149  
 Zhang Wenyu, 3, 13  
 Zhang Xian, 537, 539, 541, 543, 682  
 Zhang Xi and son Zhang Honggang, 606  
 Zhang Xi3, 618  
 Zhang Xian and Xu Qing, 537  
 Zhang Xiaochun, 248  
 Zhang Xiaosi, 639  
 Zhang Xiaosong, 94  
 Zhang Xing, 53, 277, 325, 472  
 Zhang Xingji, 71  
 Zhang Xingxin, 329  
 Zhang Xu, 632, 667  
 Zhang Xuan, 460, 479, 566, 582  
 Zhang Xuanbiao, 93  
 Zhang Xuanchun, 92  
 Zhang Xuanren, 112  
 Zhang Xuanyu and Ma Renjie, 69  
 Zhang Xun, 52, 55, 129, 135, 623  
 Zhang Xutuo, 30, 33  
 Zhang Yan, 127, 629-30  
 Zhang Yanghao, 693  
 Zhang Yanhong, 134  
 Zhang Yanlang, 156  
 Zhang Yanlu, 201  
 Zhang Yanran, 624, 626  
 Zhang Yanwei, 164, 211  
 Zhang Yanze, 163-64, 172  
 Zhang Ye, 157  
 Zhang Yi and Bai Anmin, 465, 531, 660  
 Zhang Yichao, 60, 76, 101, 239  
 Zhang Yichao's Guiyi Army, 62  
 Zhang Yifu (Zhang Hongdao), 648  
 Zhang Yimu, 583  
 Zhang Ying, 162, 577  
 Zhang Yingke, 646  
 Zhang Yizhi, 46  
 Zhang Yizhi and Zhang Zongchang, 46  
 Zhang Yong, 531-32, 680  
 Zhang Yongji and Hun Shizhi, 55  
 Zhang You, 95  
 Zhang Yu, 338, 633  
 Zhang Yue, Li Hujiao and Zhang Hanyun, 131  
 Zhang Yuan, 240, 269, 271-73  
 Zhang Yuan'gui, 65, 137  
 Zhang Yuanhui, 167  
 Zhang Yun, 207  
 Zhang Yuxian, 210  
 Zhang Zao, Jinn Hui, and Li Shitai, 175  
 Zhang Zhen, 580, 584, 709  
 Zhang Zhi, 332, 339, 417, 623  
 Zhang Zhensun, 645  
 Zhang Zhibai, 227, 236, 254  
 Zhang Zhifang, 117-18  
 Zhang Zhiyuan, 711  
 Zhang Zhong'an, 511  
 Zhang Zhongliang, 94  
 Zhang Zongchang brothers, 46  
 Zhang Zhongwu, 17, 77, 130, 299, 367, 400  
 Zhang Zhongxiong, 250  
 Zhang Zhongyan and Zhao Bin, 535  
 Zhang Zai, Cheng Hao and Zhu Xi, 573  
 Zhang Zaili, 592  
 Zhang Zao, Jinn Hui, and Li Shitai, 175  
 Zhang Zi, 636  
 Zhang Zigai, 542, 548  
 Zhang Zimian, 112, 115  
 Zhang Zong, 513  
 Zhang Zongchang, 46  
 Zhangbei, 318-19, 321-22, 327, 409, 413  
 Zhangde, 328-29, 347-48, 351, 421, 658, 701  
 Zhangye, 30, 97, 99-101, 239-40, 266-67  
 Zhangsun Cheng, 27, 39  
 Zhangsun Sheng, 27-28, 39  
 Zhangsun Shunde, 40  
 Zhangsun Wuji, 39-40, 46  
 Zhangzhou, 200, 202, 204-7, 225, 643-44, 716-18  
 Zhangzhou prefect Wang Jicheng, 206  
 Zhangzhou rebellion, 644  
 Zhangzhong, 80, 90, 101  
 Zhang Zigai, 542, 548  
 Zhao4zhou, 312, 330-31, 413  
 Zhao4zhou and Yichun forts, 307  
 Zhao An, 637-9  
 Zhao Bao, 616  
 Zhao Baoji, 235, 264  
 Zhao Bi, 512, 607, 609-10, 619, 660, 662  
 Zhao Bi and Dong Wenbing, 657  
 Zhao Bin, 535, 634  
 Zhao Bing, 634, 640, 646-8



Zhao Bozhong, 705, 712  
 Zhao Bushi, 532  
 Zhao Cai, 604  
 Zhao Changwen, 34  
 Zhao Chen, 251, 539  
 Zhao Chenggui, 185  
 Zhao Chengtai, 207  
 Zhao Chong, 348, 422  
 Zhao Chongtao, 182  
 Zhao Chou, 122  
 Zhao Chun, 550  
 Zhao Cuo Zheng, 180  
 Zhao Daosheng, 45  
 Zhao Defang, 228, 548, 665  
 Zhao Dejun, 156–57, 159–60  
 Zhao Dejun and Zhao Yanshou, 150, 152–3, 160  
 Zhao Deming, 239, 265–67  
 Zhao Deyin, 128–29, 183–84  
 Zhao Daosheng, 45  
 Zhao Dingying, 626, 637–8  
 Zhao Dong and Xia Gao, 574  
 Zhao Du, 11  
 Zhao Dun, 549  
 Zhao Fan, 360, 561–62, 564, 571–72  
 Zhao Fan and Zhao Kui, 354, 559, 561, 564, 573  
 Zhao Fang, 286  
 Zhao Feng, 158  
 Zhao Fu, 511, 573  
 Zhao Gong, 309–10, 313, 376–77, 379, 558–59  
 Zhao Gongshi, 583  
 Zhao Gou, 250, 529, 542–43, 548  
 Zhao Guicheng, 552  
 Zhao Hanzhang, 73  
 Zhao Heng, 233, 235, 248, 250–51, 264  
 Zhao Hongyin, 165, 168, 174, 219–21  
 Zhao Huang, 132, 189  
 Zhao Hui, 165  
 Zhao Huicong, 94  
 Zhao Ji, 218, 246, 248, 279  
 Zhao Jinn, 642  
 Zhao Junyong, 703, 711–12  
 Zhao Kai, 571  
 Zhao King Wulingwang, 4, 6  
 Zhao Kuangming, 184–85  
 Zhao Kuangning, 178, 184–85  
 Zhao Kuangyi, 209, 212, 226, 228–9, 253, 263  
 Zhao Kuangyin, 167–69, 173–74, 211–12, 219–24,  
 228–29, 262–63  
 Zhao Kuangyin and Emperor Zhou-shizong,  
 168, 221  
 Zhao Kui, 559, 561, 564, 571–74, 586, 588  
 Zhao Kuo, 549  
 Zhao Li, 535  
 Zhao Liangbi, 608, 657, 661, 672  
 Zhao Liangsi, 246–7, 255–6, 308  
 Zhao Mao, 627  
 Zhao Meng, 118  
 Zhao Mengfu, 665, 693, 695  
 Zhao Mengji, 604  
 Zhao Mengjin, 628  
 Zhao Mengxing, 643, 645  
 Zhao Mengzhu, 625  
 Zhao Pu, 223, 228–9, 233, 263, 266, 649  
 Zhao Pusheng, 705, 708, 712  
 Zhao Qi, 616, 626, 666  
 Zhao Rushi (Zhao Rukuo), 218  
 Zhao Ruxiang, 582  
 Zhao Ruyu, 549–50  
 Zhao Ruyu, Zhao Yanyu, 549  
 Zhao Shanzheng, 105, 180  
 Zhao Shanxiang, 105, 180, 559, 564  
 Zhao Shen, 539, 546, 561  
 Zhao Sheng and Ding Sheng, 561  
 Zhao Shi, 634, 640, 642, 668  
 Zhao Shichang, 642  
 Zhao Shigeng, 576  
 Zhao Shiniao, 543  
 Zhao Shouyue, 339, 417  
 Zhao Shu, 242  
 Zhao Shun, 597, 600  
 Zhao Siwan, 165  
 Zhao Tai, 154  
 Zhao Tianxi, 358  
 Zhao Tingyin, 157–58  
 Zhao Wei, 474  
 Zhao Wenbian, 120, 125  
 Zhao Wan'gong and Guo Yingjie, 73  
 Zhao Wei, 474  
 Zhao Weiqing, 281, 531, 539  
 Zhao Wenhui<sup>4</sup>, 69  
 Zhao Xiala, 600, 615–16, 636, 638  
 Zhao Xian, 626, 635, 648, 667–68, 676  
 Zhao Xiang, 572  
 Zhao Xingke, 629  
 Zhao Xingshi, 141, 146  
 Zhao Xuzhi, 532  
 Zhao Yan, 150–51  
 Zhao Yanna, 346, 357, 556, 571–72, 578–79, 581–82  
 Zhao Yanshou, 160, 163  
 Zhao Yi, 543, 552, 635, 672  
 Zhao Yin, 589  
 Zhao Ying, 160, 163  
 Zhao Yinheng, 137  
 Zhao Yu, 641

Zhao Yuanhao (Li Yuanhao), 240  
 Zhao Yue, 133  
 Zhao Yugui, 588  
 Zhao Yun, 560, 609, 661  
 Zhao Yunrang, 242  
 Zhao Yurui and Zhao Naiyou, 635  
 Zhao Yuzhao, 642  
 Zhao Yuze, 642  
 Zhao Yuzhao, 642  
 Zhao Zaili, 154–55  
 Zhao Zhang  
 Zhao Zhe, 535  
 Zhao Zhenzhi and Zhao Ziquan, 626  
 Zhao Zhu, 478  
 Zhao Zun, 458, 547  
 Zhao Yi  
 Zhao Yin  
 Zhao Yugui, 588  
 Zhao Zaili, 154–5  
 Zhao Zan (Zhao Kuangzan), 223  
 Zhao Zhang, 121  
 Zhao Zhong, 677  
 Zhao Zun, 458, 547  
 Zhao-wang, King, 22–23, 138, 144  
*Zhao-zhong Lu*, 565–66, 577–80, 583–84, 621–23, 627, 641–42  
 Zhaocheng, 129  
 Zhaotong, 516, 593  
 Zhaoyi-jun Army, 127, 141, 160, 352  
 Zhaozhou, 48, 70, 144, 145  
 Zha Wenhui, 199  
 Zhebie (Jebe), 317–19, 324–25, 327–28, 412, 414  
 Zhe-dong, 642  
 Zhejiang, 115–17, 198, 634, 642, 704  
 Zhelong-zu tribe, 265  
 Zhelucheng city, 114  
 Zhenlzhou, 534, 551, 573–74, 596, 598, 640–42  
 Zhen4zhou, 124, 142, 144, 152, 328  
 Zhending, 248–50, 334–35, 344, 349, 358–59, 413, 424, 466, 469–70, 531  
 Zheng Changtu, 120, 124  
 Zheng Congdang, 119–20  
 Zheng Congyi, 357  
 Zheng Ding, 616, 635, 645, 658, 661  
 Zheng Gong, 166  
 Zheng He (Zheng Heh), 711, 722, 724  
 Zheng Huchen, 628  
 Zheng Hui and Zheng Maisi, 99  
 Zheng Jiang, 659  
 Zheng Jilin, 156  
 Zheng Jin, 213  
 Zheng Ju, 59, 100  
 Zheng Junxiong, 176  
 Zheng Lian, 208  
 Zheng Longdan, 180  
 Zheng Maisi, 99, 105, 180, 513  
 Zheng Min, 716  
 Zheng Qingzhi, 552, 571, 573, 578, 588  
 Zheng Renmin, 209  
 Zheng Shaoye, 183  
 Zheng Sixiao, 628, 632–33, 640, 642, 644  
 Zheng Sun, 361, 562  
 Zheng Tian, 112, 119  
 Zheng Tian2, 118  
 Zheng Ting, 549  
 Zheng Wenhui, 684  
 Zheng Yi, 23, 200, 670  
 Zheng Yuchun, Guo Xing, Guo Ying, 711  
 Zheng Yunzhong, 246, 255  
 Zheng Zhu, 61  
*Zheng Meng Ji*, 309–10, 374, 378–80  
 Zheng-yang, 623  
 Zhengding, 142, 145, 227, 231, 233  
 Zhen'guo-jun, 129, 131, 149, 151, 178  
 Zhengzhou, 463, 465, 467, 531  
 Zhenhai-jun, 192, 196  
 Zhenjiang, 190, 192, 547–48, 627–28, 630–32  
 Zhenla, 680–81  
 Zhennan-wang, King, 679, 681, 683–84  
 Zhenrong-jun, 236, 264–65, 267  
 Zhenwu army, 162, 262, 400  
 Zhenxi-jun army, 95, 600  
 Zhenyuan, 55, 240, 686, 692  
 Zhenzhou, 109, 149–50, 166, 169, 231, 234  
 Zhenzhou and Gaoyang-guan troops, 234  
 Zhigubu, 287  
*Zhiyuan Xin Ge*, 695  
 Zhizdra River, 487  
 Zhong Hui, 154  
 Zhong Kuangshi, 137, 190  
 Zhong Tinghui, 169, 221  
 Zhong Zhuan, 135–36, 190, 201  
 Zhong-du, 314, 317, 321–2, 324–25, 329, 331–35, 337–38, 341–43, 429, 414, 416, 419, 693  
 Zhongdu-xian, 151  
 Zhong-jing, 78, 302, 307–8, 380, 474  
 Zhongshan, 248–50, 332, 334, 343, 348–49, 529, 600  
 Zhongshan-guo state, 5–6  
 zhong-Tang (middle tang dynasty) era, 179, 193  
 Zhongwu-jun Army, 113, 121, 128, 175  
 Zhongwu-jun General Soong Hao, 116  
 Zhongxiang, 537, 573, 576, 621–24  
 Zhongxian-wang, King, 197, 331–32  
 Zhongxiao-jun Army, 357, 362, 468, 470, 471

Zhongxing-fu, 283, 287, 360, 406, 455–56  
 Zhongyi-jun, 347, 350, 543, 545, 558  
 Zhongyi-jun Army, 346, 348, 350, 557–58, 560  
 Zhongyi-jun army generals Geng Jing and Wang  
     Shilong, 546  
 Zhong-yi-Ren militia army, 554  
*zhong-zhou* (central prefecture), 572, 609  
 Zhongzhou, 178–80, 186, 549, 588, 638  
 Zhou Bolan, 676  
 Zhou Bao, 136  
 Zhou Baoquan, 188, 224  
 Zhou Ben, 136, 189–91, 196, 202  
 Zhou Bida, 230, 244, 549  
 Zhou Chenghui, 64, 134  
 Zhou Chi, 61  
 Zhou Chun and Chen Kun, 258  
 Zhou Cishuo, 575  
 Zhou Dagan, 681  
 Zhou Baoning, 45  
 Zhou Dewei, 142–48, 161, 170, 261  
 Zhou Ding, 99  
 Zhou Dunyi, Zhang Zai, Cheng Hao and Zhu  
     Xi, 573  
 Zhou Faming, 34  
 Zhou Ji, 117–8, 121–2, 128, 175  
 Zhou Jie, 209  
 Zhou Liangxiao, 370–71, 376  
 Zhou Luohu, 24  
 Zhou Mi, 466  
 Zhou Quan and Zhou Dexing, 711  
 Zhou Ru, 163  
 Zhou Shiyong, 646  
 Zhou Tong, 136  
 Zhou Weijian, 195  
 Zhou Wende and Zhou Wenyi, 218  
 Zhou Wenyong, 647–48  
 Zhou Xing, 724  
 Zhou Xingfeng, 187–88, 225  
 Zhou Xitong, 705  
 Zhou Yanshen, 203  
 Zhou Yi, 99  
 Zhou Yiti, 50, 71–2  
 Zhou Youning, 135  
 Zhou Youqian, 154  
 Zhou Youyu, 130  
 Zhou Zhiyu, 151  
*Zhou Shu*, 22, 52, 258  
 Zhou Emperor Shizong, 168, 183, 194, 221–22  
 Zhou Emperor Taizu, 167  
 Zhou King Jingwang, 17, 367  
 Zhou King Muwang, 86, 258, 270  
 Zhou King Nanwang, 61  
 Zhou King Pingwang, 4, 295  
 Zhou King Wen-wang, 609  
 Zhou King Wuwang, 83–84, 273, 293, 718  
 Zhou King Xuanwang, 3  
 Zhou King Youwang, 3  
 Zhou King Zhaowang, 3  
 Zhou-shizong, 168–69, 174, 221–22  
 Zhuchi (Jochi), 319–20, 325–26, 330, 409, 412  
 Zhuge Shuang, 116, 118, 120, 125, 127  
 Zhu Can, Yang Shilin, Meng Haigong, Xu Yuanlang,  
     Lu Zushang and Zhou Faming, 34  
 Zhu Ci, 58, 111  
 Zhu Di, 710, 724  
 Zhu Gai and Liu Zuo, 568  
 Zhu Gang and Zhu Di, 724  
 Zhu Guobao, 604  
 Zhu Huan, 641  
 Zhu Huang (Zhu Wen), 141  
 Zhu Hongzhao and Feng Zan, 158  
 Zhu Jin, 124–27, 130–31, 133, 189, 192  
 Zhu Jingmei, 116  
 Zhu Jingyu, 202  
 Zhu Ke, 130  
 Zhu Liangzu, 715  
 Zhu Lingde (Li Lingde) and Zhu Lingxi, 154  
 Zhu Lingqian, 98  
 Zhu Lingyun, 195  
 Zhu Mei, 118, 124–25, 152  
 Zhu Mei and Li Changfu, 64, 124  
 Zhu Meng, 291  
 Zhu Mian, 248  
 Zhu Qian, 669  
 Zhu Qiong, 131  
 Zhu Qin, 133  
 Zhu Rui, 626  
 Zhu Sheng, 621  
 Zhu Shengfei, 532  
 Zhu Shizhen, 711  
 Zhu Shouyin, 150, 155–56  
 Zhu Siqing, 190  
 Zhu Sisun, 594, 624–25  
 Zhu Tao, 58  
 Zhu Wei, 131  
 Zhu Wen (Zhu Quanzhong), 63–65, 120–38, 134–5,  
     141–50, 170–71, 183–87, 189–91, 197, 201  
 Zhu Wen and Li Kuangwei, 130  
 Zhu Wen and nephew Zhu Youning, 135  
 Zhu Wen and prime minister Zhang Rui, 129  
 Zhu Wen and Qin Zongquan, 125  
 Zhu Wen and Shi Pu, 123, 189  
 Zhu Wen and Yang Xingmi, 136, 189–90  
 Zhu Wen and Zhao Deyin, 128

- Zhu Wenjin, 204–6  
 Zhu Wen's daughter, 171  
 Zhu Wen's usurpation, 132, 153, 175, 181  
 Zhu Xuan and Zhu Jin, 125-7, 131, 133, 189  
 Zhu Xi, 219, 309, 471, 550, 573, 669, 694  
 Zhu Xicai, 58, 75  
 Zhu Xuan, 119–20, 124–25, 127–28, 130–33  
 Zhu Xuan and Zhu Jin, 125–27, 131, 133, 189  
 Zhu Yi, 58  
 Zhu Yongning, 135  
 Zhu Yongtang, 86, 293  
 Zhu Yongzhi, 133  
 Zhu Yougong, 131, 136–37, 190  
 Zhu Yougui, 146–47  
 Zhu Youhui, 149  
 Zhu Youliang, 137  
 Zhu Youlun, 134  
 Zhu Youneng, 149  
 Zhu Youning, 135  
 Zhu Youqian, 143, 149, 154  
 Zhu Youwen, 146  
 Zhu Youyu, 130, 133  
 Zhu Youzhen, 147  
 Zhu Yu, 549  
 Zhu Yuanzhang, 666, 694, 699, 707–8, 710–15,  
 717–18, 720, 722–23  
 Zhu Yuanzhang's wife, 711–12  
 Zhu Zhao, 280  
 Zhu Zhen and Ge Congzhou, 126  
 Zhu Zhen1, 147, 192, 198  
 Zhu Zong, 708  
 Zhuhu Gaoqi, 322, 329, 331, 333–34, 339, 552–  
 54, 553  
 Zhu-maan barbarian tribes, 103  
 Zhuo-jun, 11, 30, 33, 220  
 Zhuolu, 130, 132, 322, 327-8, 413-4  
 Zhuoluo-ai mountain pass, 328  
 Zhuozhang River of Shanxi, 110  
 Zhuozhou (Zhuolu), 78, 219. 230–32, 246–47, 322,  
 327–28, 332, 337, 410, 414  
*zhu-wang* (Mongol kings), 509, 572, 598, 600, 657–  
 59, 678–79. *See also* 'zong-wang'.  
 Zhuxianzhen, 542  
 Zhuyang, 460, 538  
 Zhuye Baye, 106, 108  
 Zhuye Chishuai, 112  
 Zhuye Chixin, 110, 112  
 Zhuye Fuguo, 108  
 Zhuye Guduozi, 75, 108  
 Zhuye Guzhu, 108  
 Zhuye Jinzhong, 75, 101, 108–9, 170  
 Zhuye Que, 107, 170  
 Zhuye Zhiyi, 109–10  
 Zilzhou, 116, 120, 343, 358, 361  
 Zi3zhou, 158, 177–78, 181, 607  
 Zigui, 178, 585  
 Ziqi-guo, 516-7, 605  
 Ziqi-guo state's capital city Alu-cheng, 516  
 Zishan *Da-quan-ji*, 652  
 Ziyun-cheng, 588, 637  
*Zi Zhi Tong-jian*, 70, 72, 75, 309, 378–79  
 Zizhong, 583–84  
 Zizhou, 455, 583-5, 614  
 Zongge-cheng, 245, 266–67, 278  
*zong-wang* (Mongol kings), 515, 520, 590–91, 598,  
 603. *See also* 'zhu-wang'.  
 Zu-bu (Da-da/Tartar), 306–7, 311–12, 314–16,  
 370, 383  
 Zugepu (Zu-ge-bu/Zu-bu), 314-6  
 Zunyi, 579–80, 597, 639  
*Zuo Zhuan*, 2–3, 52, 85, 90  
 Zuwu Khan, 73  
*Zu-yuan-huangdi*, 309–10, 379, 311  
 Zuzhou (Khitan ancestral prefecture), 78, 255

Note: This *Index* is not an exhaustive list of single-mention names of persons, places, and events from this barbarian tetralogy *Book III*. Wherever the indexing software program failed to index via its frequency algorithm, best efforts were made to manually add back such single-mention entries concerning the names of persons as much as possible for preserving the spirits of writing this book, namely, to keep alive history and preserve names of the actors and actresses who made into or made the history.